

1. NOUN

Any Name is a noun. **Ex:-** Mohan, Patna. bread, pen, beauty, etc.

Points to Remember

1. **Noun + al/en/ic/y/ly/ful/less/ish = Adjective**
Ex:—National + al = National, Heaven + ly = Heavenly, Wood + en = Wooden, Beauty + ful = Beautiful. Islam + ic = Islamic, Care + less = Careless Air + y = Airy, Child + ish = Childish

2. **Noun + en/ify/ize = Verb.** **Ex:—**Strength + en = strengthen, Class + ify = Classify, Central + ize = Centralize

3. **One of / The number of / A number of / A lot of / Plenty of / Most of / Each of / Either of / Neither of** के बाद **Plural Countable Noun** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

One of the boy was ill. (×)

One of the boys was ill. (✓)

A lot of boy were playing. (×)

A lot of boys were playing. (✓)

Either of the boy is intelligent. (×)

Either of the boys is intelligent. (✓)

Number दो प्रकार के होते हैं—

I. **Singular Number (एक वचन)** : जब किसी Noun से एक व्यक्ति, वस्तु या स्थान का बोध हो, तो उसे Singular Noun कहते हैं। **Ex:—** A book, a pen, an orator etc.

II. **Plural Number (बहुवचन)** : जब किसी Noun से दो या दो से अधिक व्यक्ति, वस्तु या स्थान का बोध हो, तो उसे Plural Noun कहते हैं। **Ex:—** Boys, girls, pencils, cows etc.

याद रखें : Proper, Abstract तथा Material Nouns का बहुवचन (Plural) कभी नहीं होता है।

Proper (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा) – Ram, Mohan etc.

Abstract Noun (भाववाचक संज्ञा) – Height, Length etc.

Material Noun (द्रव्यवाचक संज्ञा) – Tea, Water etc.

Singular से Plural Number बनाने के नियम

1. साधारणतया Noun के अंत में 'S' जोड़कर

Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Boy - Boys, Girl - Girls, Cow - Cows etc.

2. Noun के अंत में यदि s, x, ch, sh, z, ss हो, तो उसमें 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Bus - Buses, Tax - Taxes, Watch - Watches, Bush - Bushes, Topaz - Topazes, Class - Classes.

याद रखें : लेकिन Noun जिनका अंत ch से हो और उसका उच्चारण 'क' (k) की तरह हो, तो उसमें केवल 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Stomach - Stomachs, Monarch - Monarchs, Conch - Conchs etc.

3. अगर कोई Noun 'y' से खत्म हो और 'y' के पहले एक Consonant हो, तो 'y' की जगह 'ies' का प्रयोग कर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Army - Armies, Lady - Ladies, Baby - Babies, City - Cities, Fly - Flies, Story - Stories.

याद रखें : 'y' के पहले Vowel हो, तो उस Noun में 's' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Boy - Boys, Day - Days, Toy - Toys etc.

4. Noun के अंत में यदि 'o' हो, तो उसमें 'es' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Mango - Mangoes, Potato - Potatoes, Hero - Heroes, Mosquito - Mosquitoes

अपवाद : Photo - Photos, Kilo - Kilos, Piano - Pianos etc.

याद रखें : लेकिन अगर Noun के अंतिम दो अक्षर oo, io, eo, yo आदि हो और उनके पहले एक Consonant हो, तो उसमें 's' लगाकर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Bamboo - Bamboos, Cuckoo - Cuckoos, Studio - Studios, Radio - Radios etc.

5. अगर किसी Noun का अंतिम अक्षर 'f' या 'fe' हो, तो साधारणतया 'f' या 'fe' की जगह 'ves' लिखकर Plural बनाया जाता है। **Ex:—** Knife - Knives, Wife - Wives, Half - Halves, Leaf - Leaves, Thief - Thieves, Calf - Calves.

अपवाद : Chief - Chiefs, Dwarf - Dwarfs, Proof - Proofs, Safe (तिजौरी) - Safes, Belief - Beliefs, Grief - Grievs, Staff - Staffs etc.

6. आठ Nouns ऐसे हैं, जो अपने अंदर Vowel के परिवर्तन से Plural बनते हैं। **Ex:—** Foot - Feet, Goose



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

(कलहंस) - Geese, Man - Men, Woman - Women, Louse - Lice, Mouse - Mice, Tooth - Teeth, Dormouse (Risied) - Dormice etc.

7. तीन Nouns ऐसे हैं जिनमें 'en' जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। Ex :- Ox - Oxen, Child - Children, Brother - Brotheren

8. Compound Nouns में, उनके मुख्य शब्द का Plural बनाकर, पूरे Noun का Plural बनाया जाता है। Ex:—

| | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| Step-son | - Step- sons |
| Chief-minister | - Chief-ministers |
| Court-martial | - Courts-martial |
| Maid-servant | - Maid-servants |
| Governor-general | - Governors-general |
| Boy-friend | - Boy-friends |
| Pick-pocket | - Pick-pockets. |

याद रखें : लेकिन अगर Compound Nouns के साथ Preposition आये तो Preposition के पहले पड़ने वाले शब्द का Plural बनाकर पूरे Noun का Plural बनाया जाता है।

Ex:—

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| Commander-in-chief | - Commanders-in-chief |
| Father-in-law | - Fathers-in-law |
| Passer-by | - Passers-by |
| Looker-on | - Lookers-on |
| Hanger-on | - Hangers-on (पिछलग्गू) |

9. कुछ ऐसे Compound Nouns हैं जिनके दोनों पदों को Plural बनाकर समुचे Noun का Plural बनाया जाता है।

Ex:—

| | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Man-servant | - Men-servants |
| Comman-servant | - Commen-servants |
| Lord-justice | - Lords-justices |

लेकिन,

| | |
|----------|-------------------------|
| Post-man | - Post-men |
| Milk-man | - Milk-men सही होता है। |

10. कुछ भाषा के Nouns और उनका Plural Form नीचे दिए गए हैं। इन्हें याद रखें—

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Agendum (कार्यक्रम) | - Agenda |
| Pendulum (लोलक) | - Pendula |
| Axis (धूरी) | - Axes |
| Bandit (लुटेरा) | - Banditti/Bandits |
| Bacterium (कीटाणु) | - Bacteria |

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Criterion (कसौटी) | - Criteria |
| Formula (सूत्र) | - Formulae/Formulas |
| Medium (माध्यम) | - Media |
| Series (क्रम) | - Series |
| Index (सूची) | - Indices |
| Maximum (अधिकतम) | - Maxima |
| Phenomenon (घटना) | - Phenomena |
| Stratum (सामाजिक स्तर) | - Stratus/Strata |
| Radius (त्रिज्या) | - Radii |
| Datum (जानी हुई बात) | - Data |
| Genius (विद्वान) | - Genii/Genuses |
| Basis (आधार) | - Bases |

11. Material Noun का चूँकि उसका गिनती नहीं होता है अतः Material Noun का Plural नहीं होता है। लेकिन यदि उनमें s लगा दिया जाए तो उनका अर्थ बदल जायेगा और वह बहुवचन होगा। Ex:—

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sand (बालू) | - Sands (मस्सथल) |
| Iron (लोहा) | - Irons (हथकड़ी) |
| Copper (तांबा) | - Coppers (तांबे का सिक्का) |
| Land (धरती) | - Lands (देश) |
| Wood (लकड़ी) | - Woods (जंगल) |
| Colour (रंग) | - Colours (झंडा) |
| Air (हवा) | - Airs (अहंकार) |
| Advice (राय) | - Advices (सूचनाएं) |
| Good (अच्छाई, भलाई) | - Goods (सामान) |
| Work (काम, श्रम) | - Works (रचनाएं) |
| Water (पानी) | - Waters (समुद्र) |
| Way (रास्ता) | - Ways (तरीका) |
| People (लोग) | - Peoples (राष्ट्र) |
| Force (बल, ताकत) | - Force (सेना) |

अतः

A ball loses its force when it comes to the ground.

The Forces are sent to the border.

इसी प्रकार,

We should do our work.

The Works of Shakespear are good.



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

Uses of Noun

1. निम्नलिखित **Nouns** सदा **Singular** होते हैं—

Mathematics, Physics, Politics, News, Jewellery, Furniture, Crockery (कप, प्याला), **Luggage, Baggage** (सामान), **Scertsy** (दृष्टियों का समूह), **Poetry** (काव्य), **Information, Food, Music, Science, Society.**

अतः Tagore's poetries are great. (x)

Tagore's poetry is great. (✓)

याद रखें : Mathematics, Physics, Politics इत्यादि ऐसे तो Singular होते हैं लेकिन इनको Particularised (खास) या Possessed करने पर ये Plural हो जाते हैं।

अतः Mathematics is a interesting subject. (✓)

लेकिन,

His mathematics is weak. (x)

His mathematics are weak. (✓)

P.N. P.V.

इसी प्रकार,

The mathematics of Sohan is very weak. (x)

The mathematics of Sohan are very good. (✓)

P.N.

P.V.

पुनः

The politics of India is dirty. (x)

The politics of India are dirty. (✓)

2. निम्नलिखित Nouns हमेशा Plural होते हैं और इनके साथ Plural होते हैं और इनके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

Scissors (कैंची), Spectacles (चश्मा), Trousers (पैजामा), Measles (चेचक), Billiards, Police, Public, Poultry (मुर्गी पालन केन्द्र), Peasantry (किसान), Mumps.

अतः Scissors are new. (✓)

Spectacles have been framed. (✓)

याद रखें : लेकिन उपर्युक्त में A pair of जोड़ दिया जाए तो वे Singular हो जाते हैं तथा इनके साथ Singular Verb लगता है।

अतः A pair of spectacles have been framed. (x)

A pair of spectacles **has** been framed. (✓)

S

V

इसी प्रकार,

A pair of scissors are sharp. (x)

A pair of scissors **is** sharp. (✓)

S

V

3. Dozen, Hundred, Thousand, Score इत्यादि ऐसे Nouns हैं जो Singular तथा Plural दोनों अवस्थाओं में समान रूप में प्रयोग होते हैं, यदि इनसे निश्चित संख्या का बोध होता है। अर्थात् इनके अंत में 's' जोड़कर Plural नहीं बनाया जाता है। Ex:-

She has bought two dozens eggs. (x)

She has bought two dozen eggs. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

He received three thousands rupees. (x)

He received three thousand rupees. (✓)

याद रखें : लेकिन इनसे अनिश्चित संख्या (जैसे-कुछ, बहुत) का बोध हो तो अंत में s लगाकर Plural बनाया जाता है तथा इनके बाद of का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है।

अतः Hundreds and thousands of people were present there. (✓)

पुनः He has got a few dozens of pens. (✓)

4. A lot of, lots of, plenty of, the number of, a number of, one of, most of के बाद Plural Countable Noun या Uncountable Noun का प्रयोग होता है।

अतः There are a lot of book. (✓)

There are a lot of books. (✓)

पुनः One of the student has done his work. (x)

One of the students has done his work. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

A number of boy is present. (x)

A number of boys are present. (✓)

5. Each of / Either of / Neither of के बाद Plural Noun का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात्

Ex:—

Either of the boy.(x)

Either of the boys. ✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Each of the girl. (x)

Each of the girls. (✓)



Cases of Noun

Noun का Case हम तीन तरह से बनाते हैं-

- (i) Apostroph's ['s] का प्रयोग कर
- (ii) केवल Apostrophe ('s) का प्रयोग कर
- (iii) of का प्रयोग कर

Ex :—

Ram's book - राम की पुस्तक

Boys' college - लड़कों का कॉलेज

The book of Ram - राम की पुस्तक

Uses of Case

1. केवल सजीव पदार्थों (Living things) के साथ 's का प्रयोग होता है, निर्जीव पदार्थों (Non living things) के साथ 's का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

Ram's book. (✓)

लेकिन, The house's roof (x)

याद रखें : निर्जीव पदार्थों के साथ 's नहीं बल्कि of का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

The house's roof. (x)

The roof of the house (✓)

The table's legs (x)

The legs of the table (✓)

2. 's' ending Plural Nouns के साथ 's का नहीं बल्कि उसके स्थान पर केवल '[Apostroph]' का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

Girls's hostel (x)

Girls' hostel (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Boys's college (x)

Boys' college (✓)

याद रखें : लेकिन ऐसे Plural Nouns जिनके अंत में s नहीं होता, के साथ Apostroph's ['s] का प्रयोग कर Possessive बनाया जाता है। Ex:—

Women's college (✓)

Men's work (✓)

3. Compound Nouns के Last term के साथ Apostroph's ['s] का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

Father's-in-law house (x)

Father-in-law's house (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Brother's-in-law health (x)

Brother-in-law's health (✓)

4. जब दो Nouns एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु को बताते हैं, तो बाद वाला Noun पहले वाले Noun का Noun of apposition कहलाता है और ऐसी स्थिति में बाद वाले Noun के साथ ही Apostroph's ['s] का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

Tagore, the poet's house was dawatated. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

It is Mohan's, the writer house. (x)

It is Mohan, the writer's house. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I married my brother's Ram's sister. (x)

I married my brother Ram's sister. (✓)

5. The / this / that / those + Noun + of + Noun के Structure में Last Noun के साथ apostrophe's ['s] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:-

This advice of Mr. Rao's is important. (x)

This advice of Mr. Rao is important. (✓)

6. जिस Noun के लिए Relative Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है उसमें apostrophe's ['s] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

This is Ali's house who is a singer. (x)

This is the house of Ali who is a singer. (✓)

This is Ali's house which is elegant. (✓)

(यहां Which का प्रयोग house के लिए हुआ है न कि Ali के लिए)

7. Indefinite Pronoun जैसे—everybody, somebody, everyone, anyone के साथ भी apostrophe's ['s] का प्रयोग सही होता है।

Ex:-

Any body's book. (✓)

Somebody's pen. (✓)

लेकिन Anybody's else book. (x)

याद रखें : लेकिन इसके बाद else का प्रयोग हो, तो 's 'else' में लगता है।

No body else's advice. (✓)

Anybody else's book. (✓)

8. A / An + Noun + of + Noun बनावट में Last Noun के साथ apostrophe's ['s] का प्रयोग होता है।



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

Ex:—

A friend of my wife house. (x)

A friend of my wife's house. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Mr. Rao is a friend of Mr. Saha. (x)

Mr. Rao is a friend of Mr. Saha's. (✓)

9. Hissing Sound वाले Nouns के साथ केवल apostrophe ['] का प्रयोग होता है न कि 's का। Ex:—

For Justice' sake (न्याय के लिए)

For concience' sake (चेतना के लिए)

For goodness' sake (अच्छाई के लिए)

Moses' Law (मॉसेज का कानून)

Jesus' death (ईसा की मष्ट्यु)

10. The + adjective से बनाये गए Plural Noun के साथ apostrophe's' ['s] का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

The poor's problem. (x)

The problem of the poor. (✓)

The blind's house, (x)

The house of the blind (✓)

11. City, Village, Court, Town, Hostel इत्यादि के साथ भी 's का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:-

I donot like city's life. (x)

I do not like the life of the city. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Court's decree was inrolled. (x)

The decree of the court was inrolled. (✓)

12. Everything, anything, nothing, all, many, both, each, either, neither के साथ भी 's का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

Nothing's colour is blue. (x)

The colour of nothing is blue. (✓)

Both's name are familiar. (x)

The names of both are familiar. (✓)

13. दो लगातार Nouns पर Apostrophe's'['s] का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। Ex:—

Ram's wife's brother. (x)

The brother of Ram's wife. (✓)

14. कुछ खास परिस्थितियों में निम्नलिखित expressions के साथ Apostrophe's'['s] का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

The train's

The ship's

The plane's

A boat's crew

+ arrival/departure



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

2. Pronoun

वह शब्द जिसका प्रयोग Noun के बारंबारता को रोका है, Pronoun कहलाता है। **Ex:—** I, me, mine, we, ours, us, you, yours, she, her, hers, he, his, they, them, their, it, yourself etc.

Points to Remember

1. Verb, Let तथा Preposition के बाद Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

Let **he** do this work. (×)

Let **him** do this work. (✓)

Between you and **he** there is little to close. (×)

Between **you** and him there is little to close. (✓)

2. One of, Each of, Either of, Neither of के बाद Singular Possessive Pronoun (his/her) का प्रयोग होता है न कि their का। **Ex:—**

Either of the two wives is dominated by **their** husband. (×)

Either of the two wives is dominated by **her** husband. (✓)

One of the girls has done **their** work. (×)

One of the girls has done **her** work. (✓)

3. Everybody, Every one, Nobody, No one के बाद Singular Possessive Pronoun (his/her) का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

Everybody is requested to do **their** work. (×)

Everybody is requested to do **his/her** work. (✓)

Everyone of the students has brought **their** identity card. (×)

Every one of the students has brought **his** identity card. (✓)

4. यदि वाक्य का Subject 'One' हो तो उसका Possessive Case 'Ones' का प्रयोग करना चाहिए his, her, their आदि का नहीं। **Ex:—**

One should keep **his** promise. (×)

One should keep **ones** promise. (✓)

One should keep **himself** away. (×)

One should keep **oneself** away. (✓)

5. Who का प्रयोग 'सजीव' के लिए, Which का प्रयोग

'निर्जीव' के लिए तथा 'That' का प्रयोग सजीव तथा निर्जीव दोनों के लिए होता है। **Ex:—**

Ram is the boy **which** has passed. (×)

Ram is the boy **who** has passed. (✓)

This is the pen **who** I bought yesterday. (×)

This is the pen **which** I bought yesterday. (✓)

लेकिन The boy **that** stole my purse was a student. (✓)

The pen **that** is on the table is mine. (✓)

Adjective

A word which is used to qualify Noun or Pronoun. **Ex:—** Good, bad, dangerous, beautiful, etc.

Points to Remember

1. Adjective + cy/ty/ity/dom/ness = Noun

Ex:— Urgent + cy = Urgency, Free + dom = Freedom, Cruel + ty = Cruelty, Wise + dom = wisdom

Real + ity — Reality, Kind + ness = kindness.

2. Adjective + en/ify/ize = Verb

Ex:— Sharp + en = Sharpen, Certify + ify = Certify, Dark + en = Darken, General + ize = Generalize, Beauty + ify = Beautify, National + ize = Nationalize, Broad + en = Broaden, Familiar + ize = Familiarize.

3. Adjective + ly = Adverb

Ex:— Quick + ly = Quickly, Slow + ly = Slowly, Real + ly = Really, Quite + ly = Quite.

4. Comparative Degree के Adjective के बाद than का प्रयोग होता है या than के पहले Comparative Degree Adjective का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

It is more difficult to do a work **but** to talk about it. (×)

It is more difficult to do a work **than** to talk about it. (✓)

It is **easy** to talk about a problem than to resolve it. (×)

It is **easier** to talk about a problem than to resolve it. (✓)

5. Prefer, Preferable, Prior, Senior, Superior, Junior, के बाद than का नहीं बल्कि to का प्रयोग होता



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

है।

Ex:— Ram is junior **than** Shyam. (x)

Ram is junior **to** Shyam. (✓)

I prefer coffee **than** tea (x)

I prefer coffee **to** tea (✓)

ऐसा शब्द जिनका प्रयोग Noun को रोकने के लिए किया गया हो, Pronoun कहलाता है। Ex:—

Ram is a boy.

He is a good boy.

यहां 'He' एक Pronoun है क्योंकि इसका प्रयोग Noun 'Ram' के लिए किया गया है।

Kinds of Pronoun

- Personal Pronoun (व्यक्तिवाचक सर्वनाम) :** Ex:—
He, She, It, They, You, We, I.
- Possessive Pronoun (संबंधवाचक सर्वनाम) :**
Ex:—
My, Mine, Our, Ours, Your, Yours, Them, Theirs.
- Demonstrative Pronoun (संकेतवाचक सर्वनाम) :**
Ex:—
This, That, These, Those, One, Ones.
- Indefinite Pronoun (अनिश्चितवाचक सर्वनाम) :** Ex:—
All, None, Some, Many, Few, Less, Somebody, Nobody, Someone, Anything, Everything.
- Reflexive Pronoun (निजवाचक सर्वनाम) :** Ex:—
Myself, Yourself, Ourselves, Himself.
- Relative Pronoun (संबंधवाचक सर्वनाम) :**
Ex:—
Who, Which, That, Whose, Whom, What.
- Reciprocal Pronoun (परस्पर वाचक सर्वनाम) :** Ex:—
Each other, One another.
- Interrogative Pronoun (प्रश्नवाचक सर्वनाम) :** Ex:—
Who, Which, What, Whose, Whom.
- Distributive Pronoun (विभागसूचक सर्वनाम) :** Ex:—
Each, Either, Neither.

Pronoun in Different Cases

Nominative Objective Possessive Possessive

| Case | Case | Adjective | Pronoun |
|------|------|-----------|---------|
| I | me | my | mine |
| We | us | our | ours |
| You | you | your | yours |
| He | him | his | — |
| She | her | her | hers |
| It | it | its | — |

One one ones one's
Who Whom Whose —

Use of Pronouns

1. PERSONAL PRONOUN

- (i) सामान्य तौर पर Subjective / Nominative Case का प्रयोग वाक्य के Subject के रूप में होता है, जबकि Objective Case का प्रयोग Object के रूप में। अर्थात्

Ex:-

me teach Ram. (X)

Verb

I **teach** Ram. (✓)

Verb

I **teach** he. (x)

Verb

I **teach** him. (✓)

- (ii) Let तथा Preposition के बाद Objective Case का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात्

Ex:—

Let **we** go home. (x)

Let **us** go home. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Let you and **mine** do it. (x)

Let you and **me** do it. (✓)

पुनः This invitation is **for** you and I. (x)

Prep.

This invitation is **for** you and **me**. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Between you and he, you are rouge. (x)

Prep.

Between you and **him**, you are rouge. (✓)

- (iii) Gerund (M.V. + ing) के बाद Objective Case का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

Talking he was not pleasant, (x)

Gerund

Talking him was not pleasant. (✓)

- (iv) Infinitive (To + V₁) के पहले और बाद Objective case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

I requested she **to come** here. (x)

Infinitive

I requested **her to come** here. (✓)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

(v) As / Than के बाद Nominative Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। Ex :—

Ram is as fat as me. (x)

Ram is as fat as I. (✓)

I am better than him. (x)

I am better than he. (✓)

याद रखें : लेकिन, दो object के बीच तुलना होने पर, As / Than Objective Case के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

I love you as much as he. (x)

I love you as much as him. (✓)

(vi) यदि वाक्य का Subject 'One' हो तो उसका Possessive Case 'Ones' का प्रयोग करना चाहिए his, her, their आदि का नहीं।

Ex:—

One should keep his promise. (x)

One should keep ones promise. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

One should keep himself away. (x)

One should keep oneself away. (✓)

(vii) Possessive Case के Pronoun के दो भाग होते हैं—

Possessive Case

Possessive Adjective Possessive Pronoun

(a) My Mine

(b) Your Yours

(c) Our Ours

(d) Her Hers

(e) Their Theirs

याद रखें : Possessive Adjective के बाद Noun का प्रयोग होता है जबकि Possessive Pronoun के बाद कभी भी Noun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

India is a great country and is our. (x)

India is a great country and is ours. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

This is yours **book**. (x)

Noun

This is your book. (✓)

(viii) V+ing का प्रयोग Noun की तरह हो तो उसके पहले Possessive Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि Poss.Pronoun का। अर्थात्

Ex:—

He objected to *us going* to Kashmir. (x)

Prop. Noun

He objected to *our going* to Kashmir. (✓)

Poss Adj.

इसी प्रकार,

He was astonished at *me doing* this work, (x)

Prop. Noun

He was astonished at *my doing* this work. (✓)

Poss. Adj.

(ix) 'One of' के बाद Singular Verb तथा Singular Pronoun (his/her) का प्रयोग होता है न कि their का।

Ex:-

One of my friends *has* passed *their* examination. (x)

One of my friends has passed his examination. (✓)

Order of Pronouns

1. यदि तीनों Persons (1st, 2nd, 3rd) के Pronoun एक साथ आये और उनका उद्देश्य अच्छा हो तो उनका क्रम होगा—**2nd + 3rd + 1st**

Ex:—

You I and *he* study here. (x)

2nd 1st 3rd

You, he and *I* study here. (✓)

2nd 3rd 1st

याद रखें: जब वाक्य से दोष, भूल, पाप आदि स्वीकारने का अर्थ प्रकट हो तो उनका क्रम होगा—**1st + 2nd + 3rd** .

Ex:—

You, he and *I* are criminals, (x)

2nd 3rd 1st

I, you and *he* are criminals. (✓)

1st 2nd 3rd

2. यदि कई Persons एक साथ आयें और उनमें 1st Person भी मौजूद हो, तो उनका अधिकार दर्शाने के लिए *our/us/ourselves* का प्रयोग होता है न कि *your, his* या *my* का। Ex:—

You and I have done *your/my* work. (x)

You and I have done *our* work. (✓)

याद रखें: लेकिन यदि वाक्य में First Person न हो, केवल 2nd और 3rd Person ही हो, तो *Your/Yourselves* का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

You and he are doing *our/his* work. (x)

You and he are doing *your* work. (✓)

Use of 'It'

(i) Natural (प्राकृतिक) घटना जैसे – Season, Weather अथवा समय (time), दिन (day), वर्ष (year) को बतलाने



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

के लिए 'It' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Ex:—

It is winter, It is five o' clock.

It is raining.

It was 1857.

- (ii) किसी निर्जीव वस्तु या छोटे-छोटे जानवर अथवा कीड़े-मकोड़े के लिए It का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Ex:—

It is a chair.

It is a dog.

It is an ant.

- (iii) छोटे बच्चे जिसके लिंग (Sex) की जानकारी न हो, के लिए भी It का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:-

The child was playing with toy. (✓)

The baby is crying because it is hungry. (✓)

2. RELATIVE PRONOUN

- (i) Who का प्रयोग 'सजीव' के लिए, Which का प्रयोग 'निर्जीव' के लिए, तथा 'That' का प्रयोग सजीव तथा निर्जीव दोनों के लिए होता है। अर्थात्

Who - सजीव के लिए

Which - निर्जीव के लिए

That - सजीव तथा निर्जीव दोनों के लिए

Ex:—

Ram is the boy *which* has passed. (x)

Ram is the boy *who* has passed. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

This is the pen *who* I bought yesterday. (x)

This is the pen *which* I bought yesterday. (✓)

लेकिन, The boy that stole my purse was a student.

(✓)

The pen that is on the table is mine. (✓)

- (ii) Who, which, that का प्रयोग उस Noun के ठीक बाद होता है जिसके लिए यह प्रयुक्त होता है। Ex:—

This is *Ali's* house *who* is a writer. (x)

यहां Who का प्रयोग Ali के लिए हुआ है। अतः सही होगा—

This is the house of *Ali* *who* is a writer. (✓)

- (iii) Who, which, that के बाद क्रिया (Verb) क्या लगेगी यह इसके पहले आने वाला Noun पर निर्भर करता है। अर्थात् यदि इसके पहले Noun Singular हो तो इसके बाद आने वाला Verb भी Singular होगा और यदि Noun Plural होगा तो इसके बाद आने वाला Verb भी Plural होगा।

Ex:—

It is I *who* is responsible for this. (x)

It is I *who am* responsible for this. (✓)

इसी प्रकार

One of the *boys* *who has* passed in the examination

P.N. s v.

is my brother. (x)

One of the *boys* *who have* passed in the examination

P.N. P.V.

is my brother. (✓)

- (iv) 'Who' Nominative Case है जबकि 'Whom' Objective Case अतः Who के लिए Verb आता है जबकि whom के लिए नहीं। Ex:—

The *doctor* *who I met* was Ram's brother, (x)

Sub I Sub II Verb I Verb II

यहां अतिरिक्त Verb नहीं आया है। अतः सही होगा—

The *doctor* *whom I met* was Ram's brother. (✓)

The *doctor* *whom came* here was my brother. (x)

Sub I VerbiI VerbiI

यहां Verb II के लिए Subject नहीं आया है। अतः सही होगा—

The *doctor* *who came* here was my brother. (✓)

- (v) All, None, Only, Everything, Nothing, Interrogative Pronoun Superlative degree Adjective के बाद Relative Pronoun के रूप में सदा that का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

Mr. Sharma is the *bravest* man *who* I know. (X)

Sup. degree Sup. degree

Mr. Sharma is the *bravest* man *that* I know. (✓)

Sup. degree Sup. degree

इसी प्रकार

All *which* glitters-is not gold. (x)

All *that* glitters is not gold. (✓)

पुनः This is the same pen *which* you want. (x)

This is the same pen *that* you want. (✓)

- (vi) The same का प्रयोग Noun के पहले हो, तो उस Noun के लिए As या That दोनों का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

Ex:—

This is the same shirt *that/as* I bought yesterday.

(✓)

किन्तु, The same के बाद यदि Verb छिपा हुआ हो, तो केवल As का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

This is not the same watch as mine (is).

3. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

1. Enjoy, absent, avail, revenge, introduce, sacrifice, satisfy, avoid, prostrate, acquit इत्यादि ऐसे Verbs हैं



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

जिनके बाद एक Object या एक Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। Ex:—

She introduced *me* to D.M. (✓)
Obj

लेकिन, She introduced to D.M. (x)

सही होगा - She introduced *herself* to D.M. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

He absented from the class. (x)

He absented *himself* from the class. (✓)

4. RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

(1) Each other का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है, जबकि one another का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है। Ex:—

The two girls love one another. (x)

The two girls love *each other*. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

We all love *each other*. (x)

We all love *one another*. (✓)

5. DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN

(i) दो या दो से अधिक वस्तुओं या व्यक्तियों में से प्रत्येक का बोध कराने के लिए Each का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:-

Each of the two boys has done this work. (✓)

Each of the five boys has done this work. (✓)

(ii) दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से 'एक' का बोध कराने के लिए Either का प्रयोग होता है जबकि दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से 'एक भी नहीं' का बोध कराने के लिए *neither* का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात्

Either - दो में से एक

Neither - दो में से एक भी नहीं

Ex:—

Either of the two boys has come to me. (✓)

Neither of the two boys has helped me. (✓)

(iii) दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से एक का बोध कराने के लिए Either की जगह *anyone* का प्रयोग होता है जबकि दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से 'एक भी नहीं' का बोध कराने के लिए *Neither* की जगह *none* का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

Either of the five boys has done this work. (x)

Anyone of the five boys has done his work. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Neither of the four boys has helped me. (x)

None of the four boys has helped me. (✓)

6. INDEFINITE PRONOUN

(i) Body तथा One Pronoun (Somebody, anyone) के साथ अधिकार को सुचित करने के लिए *their* का प्रयोग नहीं होता बल्कि उसने स्थान पर *His/her* का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

Everybody should do *their* duty. (x)

Everybody should do *his* duty. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Someone has done *their* duty. (x)

Someone has done *his* duty. (✓)

याद रखें : Thing से बने Pronoun (Everything, anything, ...) के लिए *its* का प्रयोग होता है न कि *his/her* या *their* का। Ex:-

Every thing has *their* own importance. (x)

Everything has *its* own importance. (✓)

7. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

(i) This तथा these का प्रयोग निकट वस्तु या व्यक्ति के लिए किया जाता है। This का प्रयोग एक तथा these का प्रयोग एक से अधिक के लिए किया जाता है। Ex:—

This is a present from my father.

These are my friends.

(ii) That तथा those का प्रयोग दूर की वस्तु या व्यक्ति के लिए किया जाता है। That का प्रयोग एक तथा those का प्रयोग एक से अधिक के लिए होता है। Ex:—

That is my elder sister.

Those are Ram's cows.

8 INTEROGATIVE PRONOUN

(i) Who का प्रयोग व्यक्ति का पता करने के लिए होता है। Ex:—

Who is at the door ?

Who teaches you english ?

(ii) Which का प्रयोग व्यक्ति तथा वस्तु दोनों के लिए होता है। इसका प्रयोग चुनाव (Selection) के लिए होता है।

Ex:—

Which of these pictures do you like the most ?

Which of you has done this ?

(iii) Preposition के बाद *whom* का प्रयोग होता है न कि *who* का।

Ex:—

By *whom* was the glass broken ?

By *whom* was the boys taught ?

By *whom* was this written ?

याद रखें : Preposition का प्रयोग वाक्य के अंत में होने पर वाक्य के शुरू में *who* का प्रयोग होता है, न कि *whom* का। Ex:—

Who was the Ramayan written by ?

Who was the boy taught by ?



3. Verb

The word that stands for doing or being something. *Ex:—Go, Come, Read, Teach, Agree etc.*

Points to Remember

1. Auxiliary Verbs तीन तरह के होते हैं—

- (a) **To be** : is, are, am, was, were, been, being
- (b) **Do**: do, did, does done
- (c) **Have**: has, have, had, having

याद रखें—

(a) Verb to 'be' का प्रयोग Active Voice में होने पर इसके बाद V¹(V+ing) का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन Passive Voice में इसके बाद V³ का प्रयोग होता।

Ex :—

I am **writing** a letter. (Active Voice)

He was **playing** the piano. (Active Voice)

A letter is **written** by me. (Passive Voice)

The piano was **played** by him. (Passive Voice)

(b) **Do, Did, Does** के बाद V¹ का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—Does Ram **reads** a book ? (x)

Does Ram **read** a book ? (✓)

Did you **played** football ? (x)

Did you **play** football ? (✓)

He does not **teaches** me. (x)

He does not **teach** me. (✓)

(c) **Has, Have, Had** के बाद V³ का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex :—

I have never **saw** the Taj Mahal. (x)

I have never **seen** the Taj Mahal. (✓)

Had you **finish** your work ? (x)

Had you **finished** your work ? (✓)

Ram has **go** home. (x)

Ram has **gone** home. (✓)

2. Model Verbs (Shall, will, should, would, can, could, may, might, must, used to) के बाद हमेशा V¹ का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

They must **felt** the fact. (x)

They must **feel** the fact. (✓)

He will **helped** them. (x)

He will **help** them. (✓)

You should **came** home. (x)

You should **come** home. (✓)

3. Verb + al /er /ion /ture /age /ance /ence /ment = Noun **Ex:—**Arrive + al = Arrival, Cover + age = Coverage

Lead + er = Leader, Attend + ance = Attendance Collect + ion = Collection, Differ + ence = Difference Mix + ture = Mixture, Pay + ment = Payment

4. Em/en + Noun / Adjective = Verb

Ex:—ern + power = Empower

em + back = Emback

en + act = Enact

en + circle = Encircle

| Infinitive | Past tense | Past Participle |
|------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| abide | abided, *abode | abided, *abode |
| arise | arose | arisen |
| awake | awoke | awoken |
| babysit | babysat | babysat |
| bear | bore | borne |
| beat | | beat |
| beaten | | |
| become | became | become |
| befall | befell | befallen |
| beget | begot, *begat | begot, *begotten |
| begin | began | begun |
| behold | beheld | beheld |
| bend | bent | bent |
| beseech | beseached, besought | beseached, besought |
| beset | beset | beset |
| bespeak | bespoke | bespoken |
| bet | bet | bet |
| betake | betook | betaken |
| bid ¹ | bid | bid |
| bid ² | bade, bid | bidden, bid |
| bind | bound | bound |
| bite | bit | bitten |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|--|--------------------------|------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| bleed | bled | bled | forbear | forbore | forborne |
| blow | blew | blown, *blowed | forbid | forbade | forbidden |
| break | broke | broken | forecast | forecast, forecasted | forecast, forecasted |
| breastfeed | breastfed | breastfed | | | |
| breed | bred | bred | foresee | foresaw | foreseen |
| bring | brought | brought | foretell | foretold | foretold |
| broadcast | broadcast | broadcast | forget | forgot | forgotten |
| browbeat | browbeat | browbeaten | forgive | forgave | forgiven |
| build | built | built | forgo | forwent | forgone |
| burn | burnt, burned | burnt, burned | forsake | forsook | forsaken |
| burst | burst | burst | forswear | forsook | forsook |
| bust | bust, busted | bust, busted | freeze | froze | frozen |
| buy | bought | bought | gainsay | gainsaid | gainsaid |
| cast | cast | cast | get | got | got; (Name, spoken) |
| catch | caught | caught | | | |
| choose | chose | chosen | give | gave | given |
| cleave c | leaved, *cleft, *clove | cleaved, *cleft, *cloven | grind | ground | ground |
| | | | grow | grew | grown |
| cling | clung | clung | hamstrig | hamstrung | hamstrung |
| Infinitive | Past tense | Past Participle | hang | hung, *hanged | hung, *hanged hear |
| come | came | come | heard | heard | heard |
| cost | cost, *costed | cost, *costed | heave | heaved, *hove | heaved, *hove |
| creep | crept | crept | hew | hewed | hewed, hewn |
| cut | cut | cut | hide | hid | hidden |
| deal | dealt | dealt | hit | hit | hit |
| dig | dug | dug | hold | held | held |
| dive | dived; | dived | hurt | hurt | hurt |
| | (Name also dove) | | inlay | inlaid | inlaid |
| draw | drew | drawn | input | input, inputted | input, inputted |
| dream | dreamt, dreamed | dreamt, dreamed | inset | inset | inset |
| | | | intercut | intercut | intercut |
| drink | drank | drunk | interweave | interwove | interwoven |
| drip-feed | drip-fed | drip-fed | keep | kept | kept |
| drive | drove | driven | kneel | knel; | knel; |
| dwel | dwelt, dwelled | dwelt, dwelled | | (Name also kneeled) | (Name also kneeled) |
| eat | ate | eaten | | knitted, *knit | knitted, *knit |
| eall | fell | fallen | Knit | | |
| feed | fed | fed | know | knew | known |
| feel | felt | felt | lay | laid | laid |
| fight | fought | foughty | lead | led | led |
| find | found | found | lean | leaned; | leaned; |
| | (Name usually fit) (Name usually fit) | | | (BrE also leant) | (BrE also leant) |
| flee | fled | fled | | | |
| flingflung | flung | | | | |
| floodlight | floodlit | floodlit | leap | leapt, leaped | leapt, leaped |
| fly | flew, *flied | flown, *flied | learn | learnt, learned | learnt, learned |



| | | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------|
| leave | left | left | overpay | overpaid | overpaid |
| lend | lent | lent | override | overrode | overridden |
| let | let | let | overrun | overran | overrun |
| lie ¹ | lay | lain | oversee | oversaw | overseen |
| light | lit,*lighted | lit,*lighted | oversell | oversold | oversold |
| lose | lost | lost | overshoot | overshot | overshot |
| make | made | made | oversleep | overslept | overslept |
| mean | meant | meant | overspend | overspent | overspent |
| meet | met | met | overtake | overtook | overtaken |
| miscast | miscat | miscast | overthrow | overthrew | overthrown |
| mishear | misheard | misheard | overwrite | overwrote | overwritten |
| mishit | mihsit | mishit | partake | partook | partaken |
| mislay | mislaid | mislaid | pay | paid | paid |
| mislead | misled | misled | plead | pleaded; | pleaded; |
| / ₁ mis 'li:d/ | / ₁ mls 'led/ | / ₁ mis 'led/ | | (NAme also pled) | (NAme also pled) |
| misread | misread | misread | preset | preset | preset |
| / ₁ mis 'ri:d/ | / ₁ mls 'red/ | / ₁ mis 'led/ | proofread | proofread | proofread |
| misspell | misspelled, | misspelled, | /' mis:fri:d/ | /' mls:red/ | ' mis:fred/ |
| | misspelt | misspelt | prove | proved | proved;(also |
| misspend | misspent | misspent | | | proven |
| mistake | mistook | mistaken | | | especially in |
| misunderstand | misunderstood | misunder stood | put | put | put |
| mow | mowed mown, | mowed | quit | quit; | quit; |
| offset | offset | offset | | (BrE also quitted) | (BrE also |
| outbid | outbit | outbid | | | quitted) |
| outdo | outdid | outdone | read/ri:d/ | read/red/ | read/ red/ |
| outgrow | outgrew | outgrown | rebuild | rebuilt | rebuilt |
| output | output | output | recast | recast | recast |
| outrun | outran | outrun | redo | redid | redone |
| outsell | outsold | outsold | redraw | redrew | redraw |
| outshine | outshone | outshone | rehear | reheard | reheard |
| overcome | overcame | overcome | remake | remade | remade |
| overdo | overdid | overdone | rend | rent | rent |
| overdraw | overdrew | overdrawn | rerun | reran | rerun |
| overeat | overate | overeaten | resell | resold | resold |
| overfeed | overfed | overfed | reset | reset | reset |
| overfly | overflow | overflown | resit | resat | resat |
| overthang | overthung | overthung | restring | restrung | restrung |
| overthear | overheard | overheard | retake | retook | retaken |
| overlay | overlaid | overlaid | retell | retold | retold |
| overlie | overlay | overlain | rethink | rethought | rethought |
| overlie | overlay | overlain | | | |



| | | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|---|--|
| rewind | rewound | rewound | smite | smote | smitten |
| rewrite | rewrote | rewritten | sow | sowed sown, | sowed |
| rid | rid | rid | speak | spoke | spoken |
| ride | rode | ridden | speed | speeded,*sped | speeded, *sped |
| ring ² | rang | rung | | | |
| rise | rose | risen | spell | spelt, spelled | spelt, spelled |
| run | ran | run | spend | spent | spent |
| saw | sawed | sawn; (NAME also sawed) | spill | spilled; (BrE also spilt) | spilled; (BrE also spilt) |
| say | said | said | spin | spun | spun |
| see | saw | seen | spit | spat; (also spit especially in NAME) | spat; (also spit especially in NAME) |
| seek | sought | sought | | | |
| sell | sold | sold | split | split | split |
| send | sent | sent | spoil | spoiled; (BrE also spoilt) | spoiled; (BrE also spoilt) |
| set | set | set | | | |
| sew | sewed | sewn, sewed | | | |
| shake | shok | shaken | spotlight | spotlit, *spotlighted | spotlit, *spotlighted |
| shear | sheared | shorn, sheared | | | |
| shed | shed | shed | spread | spread | spread |
| shine | shone,*shined | shorn, shined | spring | sprang; | sprung (NAME also sprung) |
| shit | shit, shat; (BrE also shitted) | shit, shat; (BrE also shitted) | stand | stood | stood |
| shoe | shod | shod | stave staved, | *stove staved, | *stove |
| shoot | shot | shot | steal | stole | stolen |
| show | showed | shown, *showed | stick | stuck | stuck |
| | | | sting | stung | stung |
| shrink | shrank, shrunk | shrunk | stink | stank, stunk | stunk |
| shutshut | shut | | strew | strewed strewed, | strewn |
| simulcast | simulcast | simulcast | stride | strode | — |
| sing | sang | sung | strike | struck | struck; (NAME also stricken) |
| sink | sank, *sunk | sunk | | | |
| sit | sat | sat | | | |
| slay | slew | slain | string | strung | strung |
| sleep | slept | slept | strive | strove,*strived | striven, *strived |
| slide | slid | slid | | | |
| sling | slung | slung | sublet | sublet | sublet |
| slink | slunk | slunk | sublet | sublet | sublet |
| slit | slit | slit | swear | swore | sworn |
| smell | smelled; (BrE also smelt) | smelled; (BrE also smelt) | sweep | swept | swept |
| | | | swell | swelled | swollen, swelled |



| | | | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------|--------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| swim | swam | swum | underwrite | underwrote | underwritten |
| swing | swung | swung | undo | undid | undone |
| take | took | taken | unfreeze | unfroze | unfrozen |
| teach | taught | taught | unwind | unwound | unwound |
| tear | tore | torn | uphold | upheld | upheld |
| telecast | telecast | telecast | upset | upset | upset |
| tell | told | told | wake | woke | woken |
| think | thought | thought | waylay | waylaid | waylaid |
| throw | threw | thrown | wear | wore | worn |
| thrust | thrust | thrust | weave | wove, *weaved | woven, *weaved |
| tread | trod | trodden, trod | | | |
| typecast | typecast | typecast | wed | wedded, wed | wedded, wed |
| typeset | typeset | typeset | weep | wept | wept |
| unbend | unbent | unbent | wet | wet, wetted | wet, wetted |
| underbid | underbid | underbid | win | won | won |
| undercut | undercut | undercut | wind ² /wamd/ | wound/waʊnd/ | wound/ waʊnd/ |
| undergo | underwent | undergone | | | |
| underlie | underlay | underlain | withdraw | withdrew | withdrawn |
| underpay | underpaid | underpaid | withhold | withheld | withheld |
| undersell | undersold | undersold | withstand | withstood | withstood |
| understand | understood | understood | wring | wrung | wrung |
| undertake | undertook | undertaken | write | wrote | written |



4. Adverb

वह शब्द जो Verb, Adverb, Preposition या Adverb की विशेषता बतलाता है, Adverb कहलाता है। **Ex :—**very, much, too, almost, slowly, really etc.

Points to Remember

1. Verb to 'be' (is/are/am/was/were) तथा adjective या V³ के बीच में Adverb का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

This is real-important (x)

C.V. Adj.

This is really important (✓)

C.V. Adv. Adj.

The car is **quite** rejected (x)

This car is **quitty** rejected (✓)

याद रखे : Adjective + ly = Adverb होता है।

2. Very का प्रयोग Present Participle (V+ing) के पहले तथा Much का प्रयोग Past Participle (V³) के पहले होता है। **Ex:—**

This book is **much** interesting. (x)

This book is **very** interesting. (✓)

Ram was **very** surprised at his rude behaviour. (x)

Ram was **much** surprised at his rude behaviour. (✓)

3. यदि वाक्य की शुरुआत Hardly, Scarcely, No sooner, Never आदि से हो तो इसके बाद पहले Verb तब Subject का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex :—**

Never **I have** seen such a beautiful painting. (x)

Never **have** I seen such a beautiful painting. (✓)

Hardly he **had** started when it began to rain. (x)

Hardly **had** he started when it began to rain, (✓)

No sooner the bell **rang** than the students came out from the classes, (x)

No sooner did the bell ring than the students came out from the classes. (✓)

Adverb एक ऐसा शब्द है जिसका प्रयोग सामान्यतः Verb, Conjunction, Preposition, Adjective या अन्य Adverb की

विशेषता बतलाने के लिए किया जाता है।

Ex:—

Shyam *speaks loudly*.

Verb Adv.

Priya is *very beautiful*.

Adv. Adj.

Jackey runs *very slowly*.

Adv. Adv.

Kinds of Adverb

1. **Adverbs of manner:** ये क्रिया के ढंग (कैसे/किस प्रकार) को बतलाता है—hard, well, slowly, fast, beautifully, carefully

Ex:—

It is raining *heavily*.

Adv.

He runs *slowly*.

Adv.

2. **Adverbs of Place:** ये स्थान (कहां) का बोध कराते हैं—here, there, out, away, everywhere near, away, above, below.

Ex:—

Come here.

I looked everywhere.

3. **Adverbs of time :** ये समय (कब) का बोध कराते हैं— yesterday, today, tomorrow, last month, now, then, soon before, shortly

Ex:—

I met him yesterday.

He will come tomorrow.

4. **Adverbs of frequency :** ये बारंबारता (कितनी बार) का बोध कराते हैं— always, often, seldom, once, twice, never, again, sometime

Ex:—

Ram always laughs at me.

I have never seen the Taj Mahal.

The Position of Adverb

1. Adverbs of manner, Place तथा Time का प्रयोग Verb के बाद होता है, लेकिन यदि वाक्य में Object हो तो इनका प्रयोग Object के भी बाद होता है।

Ex:—

He runs *slowly*. (✓)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

लेकिन She writes beautifully a letter. (x)

She writes a letter beautifully. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

He yesterday came. (x)

He came yesterday. (✓)

याद रखें : Time एवं Place का प्रयोग वाक्य के आरंभ में भी हो सकता है। Ex:—

Yesterday he met me. (✓)

There lived a king. (✓)

2. Adverbs of Frequency का प्रयोग main verb (मुख्य क्रिया) के ठीक पहले होता है। Ex:—

I have **seen** never the Taj Mahal, (x)

M.V.

I have **never seen** the Taj Mahal. (✓)

M.V.

इसी प्रकार,

Sohan laughs always at me. (x)

Sohan always laughs at me. (✓)

3. यदि Adverb of manner, Place और Time एक साथ आये तो उनका क्रम होगा—manner + place + time

अतः

She has been living **here beautifully** for **three years**. (x)

P M T

She has been living **beautifully here** for **three years**. (✓)

M P T

इसी प्रकार,

He sang **yesterday beautifillv**. (x)

T M

He sang **beautifully yesterday**. (✓)

M T

Some Important Points

1. सामान्यतः Adjective में ly लगाकर Adverb बनाया जाता है। अर्थात्

Adj + ly = Adv.

Ex:—

Slow + ly = Slowly

Adj. Adv.

याद रखें : कभी double Adjective का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है। यदि इस तरह का प्रयोग हो तो पहले Adjective को Adverb बना देना चाहिए। Ex:—

He is **absolute right**. (x)

Adj. Adj.

He is **absolutely right**. (✓)

Adv. Adj.

इसी प्रकार,

It is **real important**. (x)

Adj. Adj.

It is **really important**. (✓)

Adv. Adj.

2. निम्नलिखित शब्दों के बाद Adjective का प्रयोग होता है, Adverb का नहीं।

fell, smell, taste, seem, apper, loom

Ex:—

The roses smell **sweetly**. (x)

Adv.

The roses smell **sweet**. (✓)

Adj.

इसी प्रकार,

She seems **angrily**. (x)

Adv.

She seems **angry**. (✓)

Adj.

3. निम्नलिखित शब्दों के अंत में 'ly' लगाकर Adverb नहीं बनाया जाता है क्योंकि ये Adjective और Adverb दोनों होते हैं।



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

hard, fast, late

Ex :—

He is walking fastly. (x)

He is walking *fast*. (✓)

Adv.

पुनः The train is fast. (✓)

Adj.

4. Infinitive (To + V₁) को तोड़कर Adverb का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ex:—

She asked him *to carefully write* the answer (x)

adv.

Infinitive

She asked him *to write* the answer carefully. (✓)

Infinitive

इसी प्रकार,

Ram asked Mohan to not cheat others. (x)

Ram asked Mohan not to cheat others. (✓)

याद रखें : 'No' Adj. होता है जबकि 'Not' Adv.

5. यदि वाक्य की शुरुआत *Hardly, Scarcely, No sooner, Rarely, Never, Never again, Seldom* से हो तो इनके तुरंत बाद Verb का प्रयोग होता है तब Subject का। अर्थात्

| | |
|-----------|--------------------|
| Hardly | } + Verb + Subject |
| Scarcely | |
| No sooner | |
| Never | |
| Seldom | |

Ex:—

Hardly *he had* started when it began to rain. (x)

s v

Hardly *had he* started when it began to rain. (✓)

v s

इसी प्रकार,

No sooner *he had* entered the class than the bell rang. (x)

s v

No sooner *had he* entered the class than the bell rang. (✓)

s v

याद रखें : *Hardly, Scarcely, No sooner, Never* इत्यादि नकारात्मक भाव को व्यक्त करते हैं अतः इनके साथ *no* या *not* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

I have hardly not any paper. (x)

I have hardly any paper. (✓)

Use of Some Adverbs**1. Very/Much—**

- (i) *Very* का प्रयोग Positive Degree के साथ होता है जबकि *Much* का प्रयोग Comparative Degree के साथ।

Ex:—

Very good, very wise जबकि *much better, much wiser* सही होता है।

याद रखें :

Very much wise. (x)*Very much wiser.* (✓)

- (ii) *Very* या *Much* का प्रयोग Superlative Degree के साथ भी होता है। किन्तु *The + Very + Sup. Degree* होता है। जबकि *Much + the + Sup. Degree* होता है। Ex:—

Ram is the much best boy. (x)

Ram is the very best boy. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Ram is very the best boy. (x)

Ram is much the best boy. (✓)

- (iii) *Very* का प्रयोग Present Participle (V+ing) के पहले होता है जबकि *Much* का प्रयोग Past Participle (Verb+ed) के पहले।

Ex—

This book is very *interesting*. (✓)

V₄

She was much *surprised* at his rude behaviour. (✓)

V₅

2. Fairly/Rather

- (i) सामान्य तौर पर *fairly* का प्रयोग अच्छे संदर्भ में (In good sense) जबकि *rather* का प्रयोग बुरे संदर्भ में (In bad sense) में किया जाता है।

Ex:—

I like Hari because he is *rather* tall. (x)

I *like* Hari because he is *fairly* tall. (✓)

fairly

इसी प्रकार,

I don't like Hari because he is *fairly* tall. (x)

I *don't* like Hari because he is *rather* tall. (✓)

3. Enough

- (i) Enough का अर्थ 'पर्याप्त' होता है तथा इसका प्रयोग ठीक उस शब्द के बाद होता है जिसकी यह विशेषता बतलाता है।
Ex:—

He is *enough* lucky to get a job. (x)

He is *lucky enough* to get a job. (✓)

- (ii) इसका प्रयोग Adj. या Adv. के बाद होता है जबकि Noun के पहले। Ex:—

I have *enough* money. (✓)

Noun

पुनः He is *enough* old. (x)

He is *old enough*. (✓)

Adj.

- (iii) Enough के पहले हमेशा Positive Degree के Adjective का प्रयोग होता है न कि Comparative और Superlative. Ex:—

He is *greater* enough to pardon you. (x)

C.degree

He is *great* enough to pardon you. (✓)

P.degree

I am too poor *to buy* a car. (✓)

Infinitive

इसी प्रकार,

She is too *weaker* in English. (x)

C.degree

She is too *weak* in English. (✓)

P. degree

4. Too

- (i) 'Too' का अर्थ होता है - 'आवश्यकता से अधिक' (**more than enough**) या हद से ज्यादा तथा इसका प्रयोग **Unpleasant Adjectives (bad, naughty, wicked,.....)** के साथ होता है।

too bad, too naughty, too wicked

अतः too good, too happy, too healthy कहना गलत होगा। Ex:—

I am too glad to meet you. (x)

I am very glad to meet you. (✓)

- (ii) सामान्य तौर पर too के साथ Infinitive (To+V₁) का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके बाद हमेशा Positive Degree Adjective का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

I am too poor *that* buy a car. (x)

5. Ago/Before :

Ago तथा Before दोनों का ही अर्थ 'पहले होता है। लेकिन Before का प्रयोग Past to Past या Future to Present के अर्थ में किया जाता है। जबकि Ago का प्रयोग Present to Past में किया जाता है।

Ex:—

She has come three hours *before*. (x)

She has come three hours *ago*. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Ago 1994, India was not independent. (x)

Before 1994, India was not independent. (✓)



5. ADJECTIVE

Adjective वह शब्द है जो एक वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Noun या Pronoun की विशेषता बतलाता है। Ex:—

Shyam is *good*.

Adj.

Lata is *beautiful*.

Adj.

यहाँ *good* तथा *beautiful* एक Adjective है जो Noun 'shyam' और Pronoun 'lata' की विशेषता बतला रहा है।

Kinds of Adjective

1. **Proper Adjective** (व्यक्तिवाचक विशेषण) : Ex:—
Indian, Russian, Chinese, American.
2. **Possessive Adjective** (संबंधवाचक विशेषण) : Ex:—
My, his, her, your, our, their.
3. **Distributive Adjective** (विभागसूचक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
Each, Every, Either, Neither.
4. **Demonstrative Adjective** (संकेतवाचक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
This, that, these, those, certain, some, any, other.
5. **Quantative Adjective** (परिमाणवाचक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
Much, little, whole, some, enough, all, most.
6. **Numeral Adjective** (संख्यावाचक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
One, two, first, last, third, next, many, few, some.
7. **Ingitive Adjective** (प्रश्नवाचक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
Whose, what, which.
8. **Emphasizing Adjective** (बलाघातसूचक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
Own, Very.
9. **Exclamatory Adjective** (विस्मयादिबोधक विशेषण) :
Ex:—
What.

Degrees of Comparison

अंग्रेजी (English) में degrees of comparison तीन होते हैं।

1. Positive Degree - wise, beautiful etc.
2. Comparative Degree - wiser, more beautiful etc.
3. Superlative Degree - wisest, most beautiful etc.

I. **POSITIVE DEGREE** : इसका प्रयोग किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु या पदार्थ के सामान्य गुण, अवस्था आदि का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। Ex:—Sita is **as** beautiful **as** Radha.

याद रखें : Positive degree के Adjective को as.....as या so.....as के बीच रखा जाता है। Ex:—He is not so good as I.

II. **COMPARATIVE DEGREE** : इसका प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों, वस्तुओं के गुणों की तुलना (Compare) करने के लिए किया जाता है। Ex:— Sita is more **beautiful than** Radha.

याद रखें : Comparative degree के बाद Than का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। Ex:—I am **better than** you.

• जब एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु के दो गुणों की तुलना करना हो, तो कभी भी 'er' लगाकर नहीं बल्कि more लगाकर तुलना किया जाता है। Ex:-

Ram is braver than intelligent. (X)

Ram is more brave than intelligent. (✓)

III. **SUPERLATIVE DEGREE** : इसका प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों, वस्तुओं तथा पदार्थों के highest degree of quality (विशिष्टता) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। Ex:—

Rani is **the most** beautiful girl in the class.

याद रखें : Superlative Degree के पहले The का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। Ex:—

He is **cleverest** of all five brothers. (X)

He is **the cleverest** of all five brothers. (✓)

Degree of Adjective

Adjective के तीन degrees होते हैं।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|-----------|----------------|----------------|
| Fat | fatter | fattest |
| High | higher | highest |
| Beautiful | more beautiful | most beautiful |
| Handsome | more handsome | most handsome |
| Good/well | better | best |
| Bad/ill | worse | worst |
| Few | fewer | fewest |
| Little | less | least |
| Much/Many | more | most |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

Use of Degrees

1. Comparative Degree के बाद *than* तथा Superlative Degree के पहले *the* का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है।

अर्थात्, Comparative Degree + *than*..... (✓)

जबकि The + Superlative Degree (✓)

Ex:—

He is *wiser to* you. (x)

He is *wiser than* you. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Ram is *best student of* this class. (x)

Ram is *the best student of* his class. (✓)

2. Senior, Junior, Superior, Prior, Prefer, Preferable के बाद 'than' का नहीं बल्कि 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:-

I know that Ram is Junior *than* Shyam. (x)

I know that Ram is *Junior to* Shyam. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I prefer *coffee than* tea. (x)

I prefer *coffee to* tea. (✓)

3. Comparative Degree का प्रयोग दो के लिए होता है जबकि दो से अधिक के लिए Superlative Degree का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

Of the two boys, Ram is *the tallest*. (x)

Of the two boys, Ram is *the taller*. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Of the five boys, Ram is *the taller*. (x)

Of the five boys, Ram is *the tallest*. (✓)

4. Perfect, Complete, Unique, Excellent, Round, Straight, Dead, Universal, Chief आदि ऐसे Adjectives हैं जिनके पहले *more* या *most* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ex:—

Everybody knows that Ragini is *the most unique* singer of this college. (x)

Everybody knows that Ragini is *the unique* singer of this college. (✓)

इसी प्रकार

This is *the most perfect* piece of machinery I have ever seen. (x)

This is *the perfect* piece of machinery I have ever seen. (✓)

पुनः Happiness is one of the *chiefest* aim of mankind. (x)

Happiness is one of the *chief* aim of mankind. (✓)

5. Comparatively/Relatively के बाद Positive Degree के Adjective का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

The wind is *comparatively colder* today. (x)

The wind is *comparatively cold* today. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

The weather is *comparatively hotter* today. (x)

The weather is *comparatively hot* today. (✓)

6. Interior, Exterior, Minor, Major आदि Positive Degree के Adjectives हैं। अतः इनके पहले *more* या *most* तथा बाद में *than* या *to* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ex:—

This is a *minor* problem. (✓)

The interior decoration of the Principal's office is *excellent*. (✓)

7. यदि दो Adjective 'and' से जुड़े हो तो दोनों एक ही degree में होते हैं। Ex:—

Ram is *the tallest and better* student of his class (x)

S.degree C. degree

Ram is *the tallest and best* student of his class. (✓)

S. degree S. degree

इसी प्रकार,

Sita is *more beautiful and intelligent* than Rita. (x)

C.degree P. degree

Sita is *more beautiful and more intelligent* than Rita. (✓)

C.degree C. degree

8. कभी भी वाक्य में Double Comparative या Double Superlative का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

Ram is *the most tallest* of all. (x)

Ram is *the tallest* of all. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Madhuri is *more wiser* than any other girl in the class. (x)

Madhuri is *wiser* than any other girl in the class. (✓)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

9. Superlative Degree के बाद of all का प्रयोग होने पर आगे other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, जबकि than के बाद any का प्रयोग होने पर आगे other का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। Ex:—

Gold is the haviest of all *other* metals. (x)

Gold is the haviest of all metals. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Gold is havier than any metal. (x)

Gold is havier than any other metal. (✓)

10. जब एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु की तुलना उसी वर्ग के अन्य व्यक्तियों अथवा वस्तुओं से Positive Degree में किया जाता है तो No के बाद Other का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। Ex:-

No student of this class is as good as Ram. (x)

No other student of this class is as good as Ram. (✓)

Uses of Adjective

1. **Some/Any** : Positive Sentence में Some का प्रयोग होता है जबकि Negative Sentence में Any का। Ex:-

I have any money. (x)

I have some money. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I do not have some books to read. (x)

I do not have any book to read. (✓)

2. **Less/Fewer** : Less का प्रयोग मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए होता है जबकि Fewer का संख्या का बोध कराने के लिए। Ex:—

Less than *twenty* men were present there. (x)

Fewer than *twenty* men were present there. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

No fewer than two kilograms of rice was there in the pot. (x)

Not less than two kilograms of rice was there in the pot. (✓)

3. **Few/A few/The few** : इनका प्रयोग **Countable Noun** के साथ होता है जिसमें—

few का अर्थ होता है - 'कुछ नहीं'

A few का अर्थ होता है - 'कुछ थोड़ा'।

The few का अर्थ होता है - 'जो कुछ थोड़ा'

Ex:—

I have few books. (मेरे पास कुछ भी किताबें नहीं हैं।)

I have a few books. (मेरे पास कुछ किताबें हैं।)

He read the few books he had.

(जो कुछ थोड़ा किताब उसके पास था उसे वह पढ़ लिया है।)

4. **Little/A little/The little** : इनका प्रयोग **Uncountable Noun** के साथ अथवा मात्रा (quantity) के लिए होता है, जिसमें—

Little का अर्थ होता है - 'कुछ नहीं'

A little का अर्थ होता है - 'कुछ थोड़ा'

The little का अर्थ होता है - 'जो कुछ थोड़ा'

Ex:—

He had little money. (उसके पास पैसा नहीं था।)

He had a little money. (उसके पास कुछ पैसा था।)

He lost the little money he had.

(जो कुछ थोड़ा पैसा उसके पास था, उसने खो दिया।)

अतः Ram could not write a letter because there was *a little* ink in his pen. (x)

Ram could not write a letter because there was little ink in his pen. (✓)

5. **Much/Many** : Much का प्रयोग मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए Material (Uncountable) Noun के साथ होता है, जबकि Many का प्रयोग संख्या का बोध कराने के लिए Plural Countable Noun के साथ होता है। Ex:—

There is many water in the pot. (x)

There is much water in the pot. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

There are much books on the table. (x)

There are many books on the table. (✓)



6. CONJUNCTION

वह शब्द जो दो शब्दों, वाक्यांशों या संज्ञाओं को जोड़ता है, The word which is used to join phrase, clause two words. **Ex:**— and, but, as well as, since, although, either ... or, neither... nor, hardly ... when, not only ... but also etc.

Points to Remember

1. And का प्रयोग समान आशय बतलाने के वाले दो शब्दों या clauses को जोड़ने के लिए किया जाता है, जबकि But का प्रयोग असमान आशय बतलाने के लिए। **Ex:**—

Ram is brave **but** honest (x)

Ram is brave **and** honest (✓)

Ram is brave **and** dishonest (x)

Ram is brave **but** dishonest (✓)

2. हमेशा Correct pair of Conjunction का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। अर्थात्—

Lest

Should

Not only but also

No sooner than

Hardly/scarcely when

Either or

Neither nor

Both and

Although yet

Ex:—

Neither Ram **or** his brother knows him. (x)

Neither Ram **nor** his brother knows him. (✓)

Hardly had I left the house **than** it began to rain. (x)

Hardly had I left the house **when** it began to rain. (✓)

No sooner had he left **but** it started raining. (x)

No Sooner had he left **than** it started raining. (✓)

3. Until, Unless, Lest, Hardly, Scarcely इत्यादि Negative होते हैं इसलिए इनके वाक्यों में not का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ex:—You wait **until** I do not come back. (x)

You wait **until** I come back. (✓)

Hardly had I not started when Ram came. (x)

Hardly had I started when Ram came. (✓)

Work hard **lest** you should not fail. (x)

Work hard **lest** you should fail. (✓)

याद रखें : Lest के साथ केवल should का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:**—

Work hard **lest** you might fail. (x)

Work hard **lest** you should fail. (✓)

4. कभी भी वाक्य में Double Conjunction का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।

अतः and that / that why / and if / that if / as to why का प्रयोग गलत होता है।

Ex:—

He asked me **that** if I would lend him some money. (x)

He asked me If I would lent him some money. (✓)

I asked him **that why** he did not go to Puna. (x)

I asked him why he did not go to Puna. (✓)

5. Because, since, as, as soon as के बाद therefore, thus, hence, so that, so आदि का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:**—

As he came late, therefore he was punished. (x)

As he came late, he was punished. (✓)

Because he is rich, therefore he can buy anything. (x)

Because he is rich, he can buy anything. (✓)

Conjunction वह शब्द है जो दो या दो से अधिक शब्दों, शब्द समूहों, वाक्यांशों या वाक्यों को जोड़ता है।

Ex:-

Ram and Shyam are friends.

Word Conj. Word

You sing but she dances.

Sentence Conj. Sentence

Position of Conjunction

Conjunction का स्थान केवल दो जगहों पर होता है।

Ex:-



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

I know *why* Ram has failed.

Conj.

As Ram came late, he was punished.

Conj.

याद रखें: -

- (i) Sub + Verb + *Conj* + Sub + Verb सही होता है।
- (ii) Sub + Verb + *Conj* + Verb + Sub गलत होता है।
- (iii) *Conj* + Sub Verb + Sub + Verb सही होता है।

Ex :-

I know why has Ram failed, (x)

S V Conj. V S

I know why Ram has failed. (?)

S V Conj. S V

इसी प्रकार

Why has Ram failed, I know, (x)

Conj. V S S V

Why Ram has failed, I know. (/)

Conj. S V S V

Kinds of Conjunction

Conjunction को दो भागों में बांटा जा सकता है।

Ex-

- I. **Single Conjunction:** and, but, if, when, since, why, etc.
- II. **Pair Conjunction:** Not only but also, Neither... nor, Either.... or, Hardly..... when etc.

Some Important Points

- 1. हमेशा Correct Pair of Conjunctions का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। Ex—

Either or

Neither nor

Not only but also

No sooner than

Hardly when.

Both and

No other than

Not/Never or

Scarcely when.

Although/Though yet

Whether or/or not

Nothing else but

The reason why that

The reason that

Rather than

Other than

अतः *Neither* he *or* his brother knows the address of the School. (x)

Neither he *nor* his brother knows the address of the school. (/)

पुनः *Hardly* had I left the house than it began to rain. (x)

Hardly had I left the house *when* It began to rain. (/)

इसी प्रकार

Not only Ram *and* *also* Shyam can do it. (x)

Not only Ram *but* *also* Shyam can do it. (/)

- 2. किसी वाक्य में Pair Conjunctions का प्रयोग हुआ हो, तो उस वाक्य में Parallel Construction in Conjunction का प्रयोग होता है।

Parallel Construction in Conjunction का अर्थ है प्रथम Conjunction के बाद जिस Part of Speech (Article, Noun, Preposition,) का प्रयोग किया जाता है, उसी Parts of Speech का प्रयोग Second, Conjunction के बाद भी होता है।

Not only + *Noun* but also + *Noun*

Neither + *Verb* nor + *Verb*

इसी प्रकार, Not only + *Prep* but also + *Prep*.

Ex:-

Neither Ram eats *nor* drinks. (x)

Noun

Verb

यहां *Neither* के बाद Noun आया है जबकि *nor* के बाद Verb)

अतः Ram *neither* eats *nor* drinks. (/)

Verb

Verb

याद रखें : ऐसी स्थिति में वाक्य को शुद्ध करने के लिए II conjunction को आधार मानकर I Conjunction को आगे-पीछे कर सही किया जाता है।

पुनः Ram *not only* has a book *but also* a pen. (x)

Verb

Art

Ram has *not only* book *but also* a pen. (/)

Art

Art

- 3. Relative pronoun (why, who, which) के पहले *that*, *and* या *as* to का प्रयोग होता है। अतः इत्यादि गलत होता है।

Ex:-

I do not know *that* *why* he failed. (x)

I do not know *why* he failed. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

He asked me *that* if he was absent. (x)

He asked me if he was absent. (/)

- 4. Because, since, as, as soon as के बाद *therefore*, *thus*, *hence*, *so that*, *so* आदि का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ex:-

As he came late, *therefore* he was punished, (x)

As he came late, he was punished. (?)

इसी प्रकार,



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

Because he is rich, *therefore* he can buy anything. (X)

Because he is rich, he can buy anything. (/)

Use of Conjunction

1. **Since** : *Since* शब्द Preposition तथा Conjunction दोनों की तरह कार्य करता है। जब *Since* का प्रयोग Conjunction की तरह होता है तो *Since* के पहले वाला वाक्य Past Perfect Tense (has/have+V³) का होता है, जबकि बाद वाला वाक्य Simple Past Tense का। अर्थात् has/have + V³ since + V²

Ex:—

I *have* not *seen* my father *since* I *come* here. (x)

V³

V²

I have not seen my father *since* I came here. (/)

V²

V²

पुनः

Much has *happened* *since* you *join* this college. (x)

V³

V¹

Much has *happened* *since* you *joined* this college. (?)

V³

V²

2. **Until/Unless** : *Until* का प्रयोग 'समय' (जब तक नहीं) के लिए होता है तथा *Unless* का प्रयोग 'शर्त' (यदि नहीं) के लिए होता है। Ex—

They cannot do well *until* they work hard. (x)

They cannot do well *unless* they work hard. (?)

इसी प्रकार,

You wait here *unless* seven o'clock. (x)

You wait here *until* seven o'clock. (/)

याद रखें : *Until* या *Unless* से आरंभ होने वाले वाक्य में कभी भी *not* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:—

Unless you do not labour hard, you will fail. (x)

I *Unless* you labour hard, you will fail. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

You wait here *until* I do not come back. (x)

You wait here *until* I come back. (/)

3. **Lest** : *Lest* का अर्थ होता है 'अन्यथा, अपितु' आदि तथा इसके बाद *should* का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:-
- Work hard *lest* you will fail. (x)
- Work hard *lest* you should fail. (/)
- याद रखें : *Lest* एक Negative शब्द है और इसके साथ *not* का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex :-
- Make haste *lest* you should not miss the train. (x)
- Make haste *lest* you should miss the train. (/)

4. **As/Like** : *As* एक Conjunction है तथा इसके बाद एक संपूर्ण clause का प्रयोग होता है जबकि *Like* एक Preposition है तथा इसके बाद Noun या Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

सही होता है। Ex—

She ran as a *panther*. (x)

Noun

She ran like a *panther*. (/)

Noun

इसी प्रकार,

Please do like I tell you. (x)

Please do as I tell you. (/)

5. **Because/Because of** : *Because* एक Conjunction है तथा इसके बाद एक Clause (S+V) का प्रयोग होता है जबकि *Because of* एक तरह का Preposition है और इसके बाद Noun या Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। सही होता है।

Ex—

She was worried *because of* *she was late*. (x)

Clause

She was worried *because* *she was late*. (?)

Clause

पुनः She was late *because* *the train*. (x)

Noun

She was late *because of* *the train*. (?)

Noun

6. **Such as/Such that** : *Such* के बाद *as* का प्रयोग होता है यदि इसके बाद Infinitive (To+V¹) का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन *Such* के बाद एक clause (S+V) का प्रयोग होने पर *Such* के बाद *that* का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् Ex:—

I am not such a fool *that* to *believe* *that*. (x)

Infinitive

I am not such a fool *as* to *believe* *that*. (/)

Infinitive

इसी प्रकार,

There was such a noise *as* *we could not hear our selves*. (x)

Clause

There was such a noise *that* *we could not hear our selves*. (?)

Clause



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

7. **So as/ As as** : इन दोनों का प्रयोग Positive Degree में दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की तुलना के लिए होता है। लेकिन as as का प्रयोग Affirmative तथा Negative दोनों ही प्रकार के वाक्यों के साथ होता है, जबकि so as का प्रयोग केवल Negative वाक्य के साथ होता है।

Ex—

Ram is not as good as Shyam. (?)

या Ram is as good as Shyam. (?)

लेकिन Ram is so good as you. (x)

Ram is not so good as you. (/)

8. **And/But** : And का प्रयोग दो समानान्तर अर्थों को जोड़ने के लिए होता है। जबकि But का प्रयोग दो विरोधी अर्थ वाले वाक्यों को जोड़ने के लिए। अर्थात्

Positive word + and + positive word

Positive word + but + Negative, word सही होता है।

Ex—

Ram is *brave* but *dishonest*. (?)

P.word P.word

9. **The same that/as** : The same के बाद अगर verb स्पष्ट हो तो 'that' का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन जब Verb स्पष्ट न हो तो 'as' का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

This is the same book as I *wanted*. (x)

Verb

This is *the same* book *that* I *wanted*. (/)

Verb

इसी प्रकार,

This is the same horse that mine. (x)

This is *the same* horse as mine. (/)



7. Preposition

वह शब्द जो किसी Noun/Pronoun के पहले आकर इसका संबंध वाक्य के किसी अन्य शब्द से स्थापित करता है, Preposition कहलाता है। **Ex**—In, on, by, with, after, for, at, among, between, above, over, before, into, of, to etc.

Points to Remember

1. To को छोड़कर करीब-करीब सभी Preposition के

बाद V⁴ (V+ing) का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:-**

I am fond of sing. (x)

I am find of singing. (✓)

I am confident of win the match. (x)

I am confident of winning the match. (✓)

2. Accustom to, habituate to, with a view to, addict to, objection to के बाद भी V⁴ (V+ing) का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

I am accustomed to play in the month of June. (x)

I am accustomed to playing in the month of June. (✓)

He worked hard with a view to get first division. (x)

He worked hard with a view to getting first division. (✓)

3. Comprise, Despite, Order, Enter, Discuss, Describe, Resemble, Tell, Attract, Reach, Investigate, Hear के बाद Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। **Ex:—**

This book comprises of three hundred pages. (x)

This book comprises three hundred pages. (✓)

He entered into the class late. (x)

He entered the class late. (✓)

4. For का प्रयोग Period of time (समय की अवधि) के लिए, जबकि Since का प्रयोग Point of time (निश्चित समय) के लिए किया होता है। **Ex :-**

I have been living in Patna **for** 1962. (x)

I have been living in Patna **since** 1962. (✓)

He has been writing a novel **since** two

months. (x)

He has been writing a novel **for** two months. (✓),

यदि रखें : since और for वाले वाक्यों में Present Perfect Continuous Tense (S+has/have + been+V-ing) का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

I am living in Patna Since 1962. (x)

I have been living in Patna since 1962. (✓)

He is writing a novel for two months. (x)

He has been writing a novel for two months. (✓)

Preposition वह शब्द है जो प्रायः किसी Noun या Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उस Noun या Pronoun का संबंध वाक्य के कुछ अन्य शब्दों के साथ करता है। **Ex—**

There is a book *on* the table.

Prep.

There is a book *under* the table.

Prep.

Uses of Prepositions

1. At/In/On

- (i) At का प्रयोग छोटे कस्बों, गांवों या शहरों के नाम के पहले होता है जबकि in का प्रयोग बड़े नगरों, राज्यों और देशों के नाम के पहले। **Ex:-**

I live at Rampur.

He lives in Mumbai.

- (ii) छड़ी के समय (5 o'clock, 6 o'clock), Parts of day (sunrise, dawn, noon, sunset, night, dusk) तथा उम्र (Age) अथवा चरण के पहले at का प्रयोग होता है जबकि morning, evening तथा year, month, week तथा इसके नाम के पहले in का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex—**

I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning.

I am at sixteen

He will come in a week.

He takes his lunch at noon.

- (iii) खास दिन (Day) या तिथि (Date) के पहले on का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex :-**

I will start on Monday.

He will start on the 2nd June.

याद रखें: दिन के Specific Part या Particularised करने पर भी उनके पहले 'on' का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:-**



He will come on the night of 15th August.
I will be there on Sunday evening.

2. In/Into/Within

- (i) In का प्रयोग स्थिरता (Position at rest) के लिए होता है जबकि Into का प्रयोग गति के लिए होता है। Ex:-

He is in the room. (?)

लेकिन, The dog jumped in the well. (x)

The dog jumped into the well. (?)

- (ii) जब कोई कार्य निश्चित समय के अंत या बाद में होता है तो उसके लिए in का प्रयोग होता है जबकि within का प्रयोग 'समय से पहले' के अर्थ में होता है। Ex:-

He will come in a week.

(वह एक सप्ताह बाद आयेगा)

He will come within a week.

(वह एक सप्ताह के पहले आयेगा)

(iii) By/In/On

- (i) By का प्रयोग वैसे यातायात के साधन के पहले होता है जिसमें यात्री घिर कर यात्रा करता है। जैसे-By Car, by bus, by train.

Ex:-

He goes to college by bus.

I went to Mumbai by plane.

- (ii) यदि यातायात के साधन निजी हो या colour mention कर दिया गया हो तो उसके पहले in का प्रयोग होता है। Ex—

He came by his car. (x)

He came in his car. (/)

लेकिन,

I went by a white bus. (x)

I went in a white bus. (/)

याद रखें : By + यातायात के साधन के बीच कभी भी Article (A/An) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:-

I go to college by a car. (x)

I go to college by car. (/)

- (iii) दो पहिया वाहनों के पहले on का प्रयोग होता है न कि By या In का।

He comes here by scooter. (x)

He comes here on scooter. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

On foot, on horse back, on motor cycle सही होता है।

4. With/By : जब कोई कार्य किसी Instrument (औजार) के सहारे किया जाता है तो उसके पहले with का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि जब कार्य किसी मनुष्य के द्वारा होता है तो from का

प्रयोग होता है। Ex—

She killed a tiger by the gun. (x)

She killed a tiger with the gun. (?)

इसी प्रकार,

A letter is written with me. (X)

A letter is written by me. (/)

5. Of/From : इन दोनों का प्रयोग करने (केवल मृत्यु) दर्शाने के लिए होता है। परंतु यदि कारण के रूप में बीमारी हो तो of का प्रयोग होता है जबकि 'अन्य कारण' होने पर from का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:-

Sohan died from cholera/fever. (x) बीमारी

Sohan died of cholera/fever. (?) बीमारी

इसी प्रकार,

He died of explosion. (x) अन्य कारण

He died from explosion. (?) अन्य कारण

याद रखें : Suffer + from + fever होता है।

Sick + with + fever सही होता है।

Ex:-

Sita is sick with fever.

I am suffering from fever.

6. Between/Among : दोनों का अर्थ 'बीच में' होता है। परंतु Between का प्रयोग 'दो के बीच' के अर्थ में प्रयुक्त होता है जबकि Among का प्रयोग 'दो से अधिक के बीच' के अर्थ में प्रयुक्त होता है। Ex:-

Distribute these sweets among Ram and Shyam. (x)

Distribute these sweets between Ram and Shyam. (?)

इसी प्रकार,

There is a friendship between Ram, Mohan and Sohan. (x)

There is a friendship among Ram, Mohan and Sohan. (/)

7. At/On/Over

- (i) इन तीनों का अर्थ होता है - 'उपर'। परंतु at का प्रयोग 'निकटता या एक निश्चित बिन्दु' सूचित करने के लिए होता है। Ex:-

Mohan is standing on the gate. (x)

Mohan is standing at the gate. (/)

- (ii) On का प्रयोग 'उपर परंतु स्पर्श करते हुए' के संदर्भ में होता है जबकि Over का प्रयोग 'उपर बिना स्पर्श किये हुए' के संदर्भ में होता है। Ex—



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

There is a book on the table. (?)

The fun was moving over our head. (/)

8. Beside/Besides : Beside का प्रयोग 'निकट या पास (by the side of)' तथा Besides का प्रयोग 'अतिरिक्त (in addition to)' के अर्थ में होता है। Ex—

Go and sit besides your brother. (x)

Go and sit beside your brother. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

Beside, a car he has a motor-bike. (x)

Besides, a car he has a motor bike. (?)

9. From/Off : From का प्रयोग जूदाई (Separation) को दिखाने के लिए होता है जबकि Off का अर्थ होता है - 'From a place or position'. Ex:-

Leaves fall from the tree. (/)

जबकि He fell off the horse. (/)

Some Important Points

1. About, after, in, on, for, before, with, of आदि Preposition के बाद यदि मुख्य Verb का प्रयोग हो तो वे हमेशा 'ing' के रूप में रहते हैं। Ex :-

I am fond of sing. (x)

I am fond of singing. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

You prevented me from do it. (x)

You prevented me from doing it. (?)

2. निम्नलिखित शब्दों के पहले Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Today, tomorrow, yesterday, last night, this morning, yesterday, evening, tomorrow morning, the following day. Ex—

He will go there on tomorrow. (x)

He will go there tomorrow. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

They arrived here in yesterday evening. (X)

They arrived here yesterday evening. (?)

3. Last/next + month/year/week की स्थिति में इनके पहले किसी भी तरह के Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Ex:-

Ram came here on last week. (x)

Ram came here last week. (/)

इसी प्रकार,

I will meet you in next month. (x)

I will meet you next month. (/)

4. नीचे दिए गए शब्दों में बाएं तथा दाएं दोनों का अर्थ समान है लेकिन बाएं वाले शब्दों के साथ Preposition का प्रयोग

नहीं होता है जबकि दाएं वाले शब्दों के साथ Preposition का प्रयोग सही होता है।

Order = ask for = आदेश देना

Resemble = similar to = समानता होना

Comprise = consist of = संग्रह होना

Tell = say to = कहना

Discuss = say about = बहस करना

Hear = listen to = सुनना

Despite = in spite of = के अलावा

Enter = go into = प्रवेश करना

Investigate = enquire into = छानबीन करना।

Ex :-

This book comprises of six hundred pages, (x)

This book comprises six hundred pages. (/)

या This book consists of six hundred pages. (?)

इसी प्रकार,

Despite of hard labour, he failed. (x)

Despite hard labour, he failed. (/)

पुनः The Police enquired the case. (X)

The Police enquired into the case, (/)

या The Police investigated the case. (/)

VERBS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITION

Abide **by** (a decision, rule, etc.)पालन करना

Abstain **from** (doing something)परहेज करना

Accuse (someone) **of** (a crime)दोषी ठहराना

Acquit (someone) **of** (a crime)दोष मुक्त करना

Agree **to** (something)सहमत होना

Agree **with** (someone)सहमत होना

Aim **at/for** (something)लक्ष्य बनाना

Apologist **to** (someone) for (some mistake)क्षमा मांगना

Apply **for** (some post, Job, etc.)आवेदन करना

Appoint (someone) **to** (a post) नियुक्त करना

Ask (someone) **about** (something) पुछना

Believe in (someone or something)विश्वास करना

Belong to (someone place or community)संबंध करना

Care for (someone or something)देखभाल करना

Caution (someone) against/about (a danger)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

चेतावनी देना

Charge (someone) with (a crime)दोषारोपण करना

Compare (someone/something)

with/to (someone/something)तुलना करना

Compensate (someone) for (a loss)क्षतिपूर्ती करना

Complain of (some trouble) शिकायत करना

Complain to (a person) about (a problem) शिकायत करना

Comply with (an order or a request etc.)पालन करना

Congratulate (someone) on (something)बधाई देना

Consist of (something)में समाहित होना

Deal in (something)व्यापार करना

Deal with (someone)बर्ताव रखना

Depend on (someone or something)निर्भर करना या रहना

Deprive (someone or something) of (something)
बंचित करना

Desire to (do something)इच्छा रखना

Die from (some cause like accident, starvation,
etc.)मरना

Die of (a disease)मरना

Differ from (something)अंतर रखना

Divide (something) in/into (parts)बांटना

Engage (someone) in (some work)व्यस्त करना

Escape from (some place or responsibility)
बचना या भगना

Exchange (something) for (something)बदलना

Explain (something) to (someone)व्याख्या करना

Guard (something or someone) against (a danger)
सुरक्षा करना

Hope for (something good)आशा रखना

Indulge (oneself) in (some bad acts)लिप्त होना

Inquire into (an accident for incident)छान बीन करना

Insist on (doing something)जोर डालना

Introduce (someone) to (someone)परिचित कराना

Invite (someone) to (some party)आमंत्रित करना

Laugh at (someone or someone)हंसेना

Listen to (music, radio, etc.)सुनना

Object to (a proposal, suggestion, etc)विरोध करना

Part from (someone or something)अलग होना या रहना

Pray to (someone) for (something)प्रार्थना करना

Prefer (someone) to (someone)पसंद करना

Prevent (someone) from (doing something)रोकना

Prohibit (someone) from (doing something)रोकना

Protect (someone or something) from (something)
सुरक्षा करना

Protest against (a rule, policy, decision, etc.)
विरोध करना

Put up with (someone)झेलना या सहना

Recover from (someone illness)ठीक होना

Refrain from (doing something)परहेज करना

Rely on (someone or someone)भरोसा करना

Repent of (some wrong act)अफसोस करना

Revolt against (someone or someone)विद्रोह करना

Rule over (someone or some place)शासन करना

Search for (something)खोजना

Succeed in (doing something)सफल होना

Supply (something) to (someone)उपलब्ध करना

Supply (someone) with (something)उपलब्ध करना

Think about (someone or someone)सौंचना

Trust in (something or someone)भरोसा करना

Vote against (something or someone)विरोध में मत देना

Vote for (something or someone)हित में मत देना

Wait for (someone or something)इंतजार करना

Warn (someone) of/against (someone)चेतावनी देना

Wish for (something good)कामना करना

ADJECTIVE FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITION

Absorbed in (some work)व्यस्त या गुम

Accused of (a crime like murder, theft, robbery, etc.)
दाषी

Accustomed to (something) आदि

Acquainted with (someone or someone)परिचित

Addicted to (a bad habit)बुरी आदत में लिप्त

Affectionate towards (someone)स्नेही

Afraid of (someone)भयभीत या डरा हुआ

Amazed at (something)आश्चर्यचकित

Angry with (someone) about/at (something)क्रोधित



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| | |
|--|--|
| Anxious about (something)चिंचित | Grateful to (something) for (something)आभारी |
| applicable to (something or someone)लागू | Guilty of (something)अपराधी |
| Ashamed of (something or oneself)शर्मिदा | Honoured with (something)सम्मानित |
| Associated with (something or someone) जुड़ा/संबंधित | Indifferent to (something or someone)अनभिज्ञ |
| Astonished at (something)आश्चर्यचकित | Inferior to (something)घटिया |
| Aware of (something)परिचित | Informed of (something)सूचित |
| Based on (something)आधारित | Interested in (something)रूचिकर |
| Blind in/of (an eye)अंधा | Jealous of (something or someone)ईर्ष्यालु |
| Capable of (something or doing something)सक्षम | Laden with (something)लदा हुआ |
| Confident of (something)आश्वस्त | Liable to (commit mistake)बाध्य |
| Conscious of (something)सचेत या जागरूक | Made from/of (something)बना हुआ |
| Contented with (something or someone)संतुष्ट | Notorious for (some bad act)कुख्यात |
| Delighted with/at/by (something)प्रसन्न या खुश | Obedient to (someone)आज्ञाकारी |
| Dependent on (something or someone)निर्भर | Obliged to (someone) for (something)आभारी |
| Devoid of (something) वंचित | Preferable to (something)पसंदीदा |
| Different from/to/than (someone or something)भिन्न | Profitable to (someone)लाभदायक |
| Disappointed with/in (someone) at/by (something) उदास | Proud of (something or someone)गर्वान्वित |
| Disgusted with (someone) at (something) चिढ़ा हुआ या नाखुश | Qualified for (something)योग्य |
| Disqualified from (something)अयोग्य घोषित | Ready for (something)तैयार |
| Eligible for (something)योग्य | Relevant to (something)समान या मिलते-जुलते |
| Eligible to (something)योग्य | Restricted to (something or some place)सीमित |
| Endowed with (something)सम्पन्न | Satisfied with (something or someone) संतुष्ट |
| Engaged in (doing something)व्यस्त | Similar to (something or someone)मिलते जुलते या समांतर |
| Envious of (someone or something)ईर्ष्यालु | Suitable for (something)उपयुक्त |
| Exempt from (something) मुक्त | Superior to (something or someone)वरिष्ठ |
| Familiar to (someone)अवगत या परिचित | Suspicious of/about (someone or something)संदेही |
| Familiar with (something)अवगत या परिचित | Tired of (something or doing something)थका हुआ |
| Famous for (something)प्रसिद्ध | Vexed with/at (someone or something)चिढ़ा हुआ |
| Fascinated by (something)आकर्षित | Weak in/at (something)कमजोर |
| Favourable to (someone)उपयुक्त | Worthy of (someone or something)योग्य |
| Fond of (something)प्रेमी | |
| Full of (something)भरा हुआ | |
| Good at (something)अच्छा | |

NOUN FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITION

Acquaintance with (someone)परिचय/जान-पहिचान
Admission to (some college, hospital, etc.)
नमांकन/दाखिला



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035
+91-9350679141

| | |
|--|--|
| Affection for (someone)स्नेह | Method of (doing something)तरीका |
| Alliance with (someone)गठबंधन | Nomination to (a post)नामंकन |
| Anxiety over/about (someone or something) चिंता/परेशानी | Opportunity for (doing something)मौका |
| Cause for (something)कारण | Passion for (doing something)उत्तेजना |
| Chance of (something or doing something)मौका | Penalty for (some mistake)जुर्माना |
| Chance to (do something)मौका | Pity for (something)दया |
| Concern for/about/over (someone or something) चिंता | Prejudice against (someone)पक्ष-पात |
| Confidence in (someone) विश्वास | Proof of (something)प्रमाण |
| Consequence of (some action)नतीजा/परिणाम | Provision for (something)व्यवस्था |
| Control of/over (something or someone) काबु/नियंत्रण/पकड़ | Punishment for (something)सजा |
| Cure for (a disease)इलाज | Reason for (something)कारण |
| Danger of (something)खतरा | Relief from/of (a problem or a trouble)राहत |
| Discussion about/on (someone)संदेह | Request for (something)विनती/निवेदन |
| Exception to (a rule)अपवाद | Respect for (something or someone)आदर |
| Excuse for (some mistake)माफी/क्षमा | Revenge on (someone) for (something or someone)बदला |
| Facility for (something)सुविधा | Reward for (Something) पारितोषिक/इनाम |
| Hope of/for (something)आशा | Search for (something)खोज |
| Interest in (something) रुचि | Stranger to (someone or some place)अजनबी/अंजान |
| Invitation to (someone)आमंत्रण | Sympathy for (someone or something)सहानुभूति |
| Key to (success)चाभी | Trust in (someone)विश्वास |
| Lack of (something)कमी | Victim of (something)पीड़ित |
| Love for (someone of something)प्यार | Zeal for/in (doing something)उत्साह |
| Lust for (something)तीव्र, उत्तेजना | Zest for (something)उमंग |



इसी प्रकार

He is **very best the player**. (x)

Ad. Adj. Art. Noun

He is **very best the player**. (x)

Adv. Art. Adj. Noun

He is **the very best player**. (✓)

Art. Adv. Adj. Noun

3. **Such / What / Many / Rather / Half** के बाद **Noun** का प्रयोग हो तो **article** का प्रयोग इनके बाद होता है न कि इनके पहले। अर्थात्

Such / What / Many / Rather / Half + A/An + N

Ex:—

I have not seen a such girl. (x)

I have not seen such a girl. (✓)

A what place, it is ! (x)

What a place, it is ! (✓)

Such beautiful a girl. (x)

Such a beautiful girl. (✓)

Many good a book. (x)

Many a good book. (✓)

याद रखें : इनके बाद Adjective का प्रयोग हो, तो Article का प्रयोग Adjective के पहले होता है, बाद में नहीं।

4. यदि किसी Adjective के पहले Too, So या How का प्रयोग हो, तो article का प्रयोग adjective के बाद होता है न कि पहले। अर्थात् How / So / Too / As + Adj. + A/An + Noun

Ex:-

You are too a dull student. (x)

You are too dull a student. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

How a beautiful girl is she ? (x)

How beautiful a girl is she ? (✓)

It is so a fine day ! (X)

It is so fine a day ! (✓)

Uses of A/An

1. **A/An** का प्रयोग **Singular Countable Noun (SCN)** के पहले होता है यदि उस Noun से किसी अनिष्टिचित व्यक्ति, जानवर या वस्तु का बोध होता है। Ex:-

She is a doctor. (✓)

I have a car. (✓)

You have an umbrella. (✓)

अतः

She is doctor. (x)

I have car. (x)

You have umbrella. (x)

2. निम्नलिखित **Idioms** के साथ **Indefinite Article** का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् In a hurry, in a temper, in a moment, in a fix, a little learning, have a pain, have a headache, make a wise make a mistake, commits crime, have a meal, take a rest, in a mood etc.

Ex:—

She replied in momemt. (x)

She replied in a moment. (✓)

Don't make noise in the class. (x)

Don't make a noise in the class. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I am in hurry, (x)

I am in a hurry. (✓)

3. Verb का प्रयोग Noun के रूप में होने पर इसके पहले Indefinite Article का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:—

He gave me **answer** to the question, (x)
Noun

He gave me **an answer** to the question. (✓)

Art Noun

इसी प्रकार

I go for walk in the morning. (x)

I go for a walk in the morning. (✓)

Uses of 'The'

1. Noun को Definite या Certain (निश्चित) बनाने के लिए Definite Article का प्रयोग होता है। Ex—

A water is dirty, (x)

The water is dirty, (x)

लेकिन The water of this well is dirty. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I bought a gold, (x)

I bought the gold. (x)

लेकिन, This is the gold I have bought. (✓)

2. यदि वाक्य में Noun + Preposition + Noun का प्रयोग हो, तो प्रथम Noun के पहले 'The' का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात्

The + N + Preposition + N

The **boys of** my **locality** are laborious. (✓)

N P N

The **gold of India** is famous. (✓)



3. Relative Pronoun (who, which, that) से पहले प्रयुक्त होने वाले Noun में पहले Definite Article का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात्

who
the + which + Noun
that

Ex—

He is a boy who can do it. (x)
He is boy who can do it. (x)
He is the boy who can do it. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Ram is a student that has failed. (x)
Ram is the student that has failed. (✓)

4. **Superlative degree** के पहले निश्चित रूप से **Definite Article** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex—**

I am best student of this class. (x)
I am the best student of this class. (✓)
पुनः She is most beautiful girl in my village. (x)
She is the most beautiful girl in my village. (✓)

5. Comparative degree के समानान्तर बनावट (Parallel Construction) में दोनों Comparative degree के पहले निश्चित रूप से Definite Article का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex—

More he reads more he forgets. (x)
The more he reads more he forgets. (x)
The more he reads the more he forgets. (✓)
इसी प्रकार,
Higher we go, cooler we feel. (x)
The higher we go the cooler we feel. (✓)

6. Comparative degree के बाद यदि 'of the two' का प्रयोग हो या Comparative degree का प्रयोग दो में एक को Select करने के उद्देश्य से हो, तो इसके पहले Definite Article का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex—**

Ram is taller of the two. (x)
Ram is the taller of the two. (✓)

इसी प्रकार

Sita is more beautiful of the two. (x)
Sita is the more beautiful of the two. (✓)

7. नदी, सागर, खाड़ी, मरुभूमि, जंगल इत्यादि के नामों के पहले

The का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex—**

The Ganga, The Black Sea, The Thar, The Indian Ocean, The Bay of Bengal, The Gulf of Mexico, The Black forest etc.

8. धार्मिक ग्रंथों या बड़े ग्रंथों के नामों के पहले **The** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex—**

The Bible, The Ramayan, The Mahabharata, The Koran, The Vedas etc.

9. आकाशीय पिण्डों (heavenly bodies), दिशाएं (directions) या जो वस्तु दुनिया में केवल एक हो, उसके नाम के पहले **The** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

The Sun, The Moon, The Earth, The Sky, The East, The West, The South, The North, The Air, The Equator

10. पर्वत श्रेणी (range of mountains) के नामों के पहले **The** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex—**

The Himalayas, The Alps, The Vindhyas
लेकिन, The Mount Everest (x)
The Mount Abu (x)

याद रखें : चोटी (Peak) या जो पहाड़ एक वचन के रूप में होते हैं उनके पहले **The** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex—**

Mount Everest (✓)
Mount Abu (✓)

11. हवाई जहाजों (Aeroplanes), समुद्री जहाजों (Ships), रेलगाड़ियों (Trains) तथा समाचार-पत्रों (News papers) के नाम के पहले भी **The** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

The Vikrant, The Meghdoot, The Virat, The Punjab Mail, The Rajdhani Express, The Hindustan Times, Times of India etc.

12. ऐतिहासिक इमारतों (Historical buildings), स्थानों (Places), घटनाओं (Events) के नामों के पहले **The** का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

The Red fort, The Taj Mahal, The Kaba, The Kurukshetra, The Battle of Panipat etc.

13. Musical Instruments (वाद्य यंत्रों) के पहले भी 'The' लगता है। **Ex:—**

I know how to play harmonium. (x)
I know how to play the harmonium. (✓)

Omission of Articles

1. Plural Nouns तथा Uncountable Nouns के पहले Indefinite Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:—**
A dogs bark, (x)



Dogs bark. (✓)

इसी प्रकार, I drink a water, (x)

I drink water. (✓)

2. भाषाओं (Languages), खेलकूद (Sports), विषयों (Subjects), त्योहारों (Festivals) के नाम के पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:—**

I know the french. (x)

I know french. (✓)

I have no interest in a Physics. (x)

I have no interest in Physics. (✓)

I celebrated the Diwali with my family. (x)

I celebrated Diwali with my family. (✓)

I like to play the cricket. (x)

I like to play cricket. (✓)

3. निम्नलिखित भोजन सामग्री तथा भोजन के नामों के पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अर्थात्

Lunch, breakfast, dinner, supper

Ex:—

I have had the breakfast in the morning. (x)

I have had breakfast in the morning. (x)

When to do your lunch ? (✓)

She invited me to dinner. (✓)

याद रखें : जब Special प्रकार का भेज हो या भोजन के नाम के पहले Adjective या Adverb का प्रयोग हो, तो उनके पहले Article का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

I have taken a light breakfast. (✓)

That was a very tasteful lunch. (✓)

I was invited to a dinner to welcome the P.M. (✓)

4. निम्नलिखित स्थानों के पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अगर इनका प्रयोग मौलिक उद्देश्य के लिए हो—जैसे—School, college; home, church, prison, hospital, court, bed, temple, mosque etc.

Ex:—

I go to school daily. (✓)

Mr. Paul went to church to pray. (✓)

The injured boy was sent to hospital. (✓)

लेकिन, I go to school to meet my friend. (x)

I go to the school to meet my friend. (✓)

इसी प्रकार

Where is hospital in this town ? (x)

Where is the hospital in this town ? (✓)

याद रखें: इन शब्दों का अर्थ Primary न होकर अन्य प्रसंग में हो तो इनके पहले Article 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।

5. Man, woman, life, death, art, science का प्रयोग यदि व्यापक अर्थ में हो, तो इनके पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:—**

Man is mortal. (✓)

Life is not a bed of roses. (✓)

Woman is man's mate. (✓)

लेकिन,

I saw a man trembling on the road. (✓)

The life of Mohan is in danger. (✓)

6. दिनों, महिनों, ऋतुओं तथा बिमारियों के नाम के पहले Article नहीं लगता है। **Ex:—**

He will come on a Sunday. (x)

He will come on Sunday. (✓)

He is suffering from the small pox. (X)

He is suffering from small pox. (✓)

We shall go to Mumbai in the winter. (x)

We shall go to Mumbai in winter. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

January is the first month of the year. (✓)

She died of cholera. (/)

याद रखें : लेकिन कुछ बिमारियों के पहले The लगता है।

Ex:—The plague, the measles, the mumps, the gout.

Some Hot Tips

1. **Type of / Kind of / Sort of** के बाद प्रयुक्त **Noun** के पहले **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:—**

I don't like this type of a man. (x)

I don't like this type of man. (✓)

What sort of a book do you want ? (x)

What sort of book do you want ? (✓)

2. **Appoint, elect, declare, crown** तथा **made** के बाद आने वाले **Nouns** के पहले **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:—**

They elected him a captain. (x)

They elected him captain. (✓)

We made him a captain. (x)

We made him captain. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

I was appointed a teacher. (x)

I was appointed teacher. (✓)

3. Most of / one of / the number of के बाद आने वाले Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

Most of boys have passed, (x)

Most of the boys have passed. (✓)

One of students has done his work. (x)

One of the students has done his work. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

The number of girls is beautiful. (x)

The number of the girls is beautiful. (✓)

4. एक ही **Noun** के लिए दो Articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। इस स्थिति में सिर्फ पहले वाले **Noun** के साथ Article का प्रयोग होता है। **Ex:—**

Mahatma Gandhi was a great scholar and a peot. (x)

Mahatma Gandhi was a great scholar and peot. (✓)

The P.M. and the chairman of Yojana Ayog has come. (x)

The P.M. and chairman of Yojana Ayog has come. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

Ram is a singer and a dancer. (x)

Ram is a singer and dancer. (✓)

5. The post of, the rank of, the position of, the title of के बाद प्रयुक्त होने वाले Noun के पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **Ex:—**

Ram was given the post of a peon. (x)

Ram was given the post of peon. (✓)

Sohan was degraded to the rank of the clerk. (x)

Sohan was degraded to the rank of clerk. (✓)

6. निम्नलिखित Idioms के साथ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है— In good condition, in temper, in rage, in detail, in final, in brief, in conclusion, in trouble, on demand, on earth, on foot, by car/bus, at night, all day, all night, in fact, for leave, on strike, for payment, in confusion etc.

Ex:—

He is in a good condition. (x)

He is in good condition. (✓)

The workers are on the strike. (x)

The workers are on strike. (✓)

लेकिन,

In a good state या In a bad state सही होता है।



9. TIME & TENSE

Tense क्रिया के विभिन्न रूपों पर आधारित एक रचना है जो यह बतलाता है कि कोई काम या दशा (State) किस समय 'हो' रहा है, किस समय 'हुआ' या किस समय 'होगा'।

Ex:—

Sita is reading a novel. (सीता उपन्यास पढ़ रही है।)

I went home. (मैं घर गया था)

Ram will go to Patna tomorrow. (राम कल पटना जायेगा)

Time के आधार पर Tense के तीन भेद होता है—

1. Present Tense (वर्तमान काल) - जो वर्तमान की बात बताये।

2. Past Tense (भूतकाल) - जो बीते समय की बात करें।

3. Future Tense (भविष्य काल) - जो भविष्य की बात करें।

पुनः एक ही काल में क्रिया की भिन्न-भिन्न अवस्थाओं को व्यक्त करने के लिए प्रत्येक Tense के चार-चार उपभेद है—

(a) Simple या Indefinite

(b) Continuous या Progressive

(c) Perfect

(d) Perfect Continuous.

I. PRESENT TENSE

1. SIMPLE PRESENT

बनावट:—

(a) Subject + V¹ या V⁵ +

(b) Subject + is/are/am + Complement

Ex:—

I *live* in Patna.

V¹

He *works* in the office.

V⁵

The Earth *is* round.

Uses

(i) वर्तमान की आदत (habit) को व्यक्त करने के लिए

Ex:—

He *takes* tea every morning.

He *gets up* before sunrise.

(ii) जो बात हमेशा के लिए सत्य है।

Ex:—

The sun *rises* in the east.

Fortune *favours* the brave.

(iii) जो काम निकट भविष्य में होने वाला हो।

Ex:—

He *leaves* for Patna tomorrow.

She *goes* to Mumbai next month.

(iv)

किसी लेखक की बात, Radio, T.V.

Commentary या Historical truth को व्यक्त करने के लिए।

Ex:—

Kalidas *is* the Shakespear of India.

Sachin *hits* the huge six.

(v) अगर किसी वाक्य में always, often, usually, generally, daily, everyday इत्यादि शब्दों का प्रयोग समय का बोध कराने के लिए किया गया हो, तो उस वाक्य की क्रिया Simple Present में होती है। Ex:—

He *is* always coming late. (x)

He *always comes* late. (✓)

V⁵

इसी प्रकार,

He *is* going to school every day. (x)

He *goes* to school everyday. (✓)

(vi) जब भविष्य की दो घटनाओं का जिक्र हो तो If, when, unless, until, as soon as, as long as, in case से शुरू होने वाले clause की क्रिया Simple Present (V¹ या V⁵) में होती है। Ex:—

As soon as I *will* reach Patna, I *will* inform you. (x)

AS soon as I *reach* Patna, I *will* inform you. (✓)

V¹

If you *will* work hard, you *will* pass. (x)

If you *work* hard, you *will* pass. (✓)

V¹

याद रखें : इनके साथ वाले clause में कभी भी shall या will का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ex:—

I *will* wait, until he *will* come back. (x)

I *will* wait until he *comes* back. (✓)

V⁵

2. PRESENT CONTINUOUS

बनावट:—

Subject + is/are/am + V⁴ (v+ing) +

Ex:—

I *am* going home.

Ram *is* playing football.

Uses

(i) जो काम हो रहा है।

Ex:—



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

We are playing cricket.

She is singing a song.

(ii) निकट भविष्य में निश्चित Programm के लिए।

Ex:—

I am going to Delhi tonight.

He is buying a car tomorrow.

(iii) निम्नलिखित Verb का प्रयोग Continuous tense (Present, Past, Future) में कभी भी नहीं होता है। Appear, desire, think, feel, hope, love, forget, remember, see, want, suppose, know, understand, hear, taste.

Ex:—

I am hearing your voice. (x)

I hear your voice. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I am loving you. (x)

I love you. (✓)

(iv) वाक्य में now, thesedays, at present, at this moment का प्रयोग होने पर वह वाक्य Present Continuous में होता है। Ex—

He reads now. (x)

He is reading now. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

They do not take milk these days. (x)

They are not taking milk these days. (✓)

3. PRESENT PERFECT

बनावट -

Subject + has/have + V³ +

Ex:-

I have done my work.

He has read a novel.

Uses

(i) यदि कोई काम अभी-अभी समाप्त हुआ हो। Ex—

The bus has left.

I have finished the job.

(ii) ऐसे कार्य के लिए Past में हुए किन्तु वर्तमान महत्त्व के बने हुए हैं।

Ex—

I have seen the Taj Mahal.

I have visited Mumbai.

(iii) ऐसे कार्य के लिए जो Past में शुरू हुए, किन्तु अब भी जारी हैं।

Ex:—

I have lived here for a month.

They have slept since 4 pm.

(iv) It is/This is + Superlative Degree के बाद Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है। Ex—

It is the best that you do. (x)

V¹

It is the best that you have done. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

This is the worst that you are doing. (x)

V⁵

This is the worst that you have done. (✓)

V³

(v) Yet का प्रयोग Negative वाक्य में Present Perfect Tense के अंत में होता है। Ex:—

He has not yet come. (x)

He has not come yet. (✓)

4. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

बनावट :

(a) Subject + has/have+been + V-ing + + for/since + time

(b) Subject + has/have + been + Adj. + for/since + time

Ex:—

I have been teaching you for three months.

V+ing

I have been ill since Sunday.

Adj.

Uses

(i) ऐसे कार्य के लिए जो Past में शुरू हुए और अब भी जारी हैं। Ex:—

I have been living here for a month.

We have been writing since September.

(ii) for' का प्रयोग period of time (समय की लम्बाई) के लिए होता है जबकि 'since' का प्रयोग point of time (समय के नाम) के लिए। Ex:—

I have been reading here for 4 o'clock. (x)
point of time

I have been reading here since 4 o'clock. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

We have been writing since two years. (x)
period of time

We have been writing for two years. (✓)

याद रखें: For + the last week/year/month सही होता है।

Since + last week/year/month सही होता है।

Ex:-



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

I have been playing since the last week. (x)

I have been playing for the last week. (✓)

- (iii) यदि किसी वाक्य में **For + Period of time** या **Since + Point of time** का प्रयोग हो तो उस वाक्य की क्रिया **has/ have + been + v+ing** की होगी।

Ex:—

I am living here since 1994. (x)

I have been living here since 1994. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

He is doing this work for two days. (x)

He has been doing this work for two days. (✓)

- (iv) **Marriage, death, childhood, arrival, departure** इत्यादि का प्रयोग **Present Perfect Continuous Tense** में होने पर इनके साथ **since** का प्रयोग होता है न कि **for** का।

Ex:—

Sita has been weeping for her marriage. (x)

Sita has been weeping *since* her marriage. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

We have been working for his arrival. (X)

We have been working *since* his arrival. (✓)

II. PAST TENSE

1 SIMPLE PAST

बनावट :

(a) Subject + V² + O

(b) Subject + was/were + Complement

Ex:-

I ate a mango.

He was a lawyer.

Uses

- (i) ऐसा कार्य जो Past में समाप्त हो गया हो।

Ex:—

He lost his book yesterday.

Pt. Nehru died in 1964.

- (ii) Past की आदत (Habit) को बतलाने के लिए।

Ex:—

He always came to see me.

He studied many hours everyday.

याद रखें : Past की आदत बतलाने के लिए 'used to' का भी प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

He used to come to see me.

He used to study many hours everyday.

- (iii) Yesterday, last + night/week/month/year, ago आदि के साथ Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

Ram has come here yesterday. (x)

Ram came here yesterday. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

He has completed his work last night. (x)

He completed his work last night. (✓)

- (iv) Past की दो साथ-साथ होने वाली क्रिया को बतलाने के लिए, Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Ex:—

She was cooking while the children played. (x)

She cooked while the children played. (✓)

- (v) It is time या It is high time या It is right time जिसका अर्थ है- 'समय हो चुका है' के बाद सिर्फ Simple Past Tense का ही प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् सही होता है।

Ex :-

It is time we started for the station.

(अब हमारे स्टेशन जाने का समय हो चुका है।)

- (vi) वर्तमान के Unfulfilled wish, condition, desire आदि को व्यक्त करने के लिए I wish, If, as if, as though के बाद Simple Past का प्रयोग होता है। Ex:-

I wish I were the P.M. of India.

If I were a bird.

याद रखें : If + S + were + S + would + V¹ सही होता है।

अतः If I were a bird, I will fly. (x)

If I were a bird. I would fly. (✓)

2. PAST CONTINUOUS

बनावट :

Subject + was/were + V⁴ (v+ing) + O

Ex: —

He was playing cricket.

They were doing their work.

Uses

- (i) ऐसे कार्य के लिए जो Past में जारी थे।

Ex:—

He was writing a letter.

They were watching television

- (ii) जब Past में दो घटनाएं एक साथ जारी हो।

Ex:—



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

While Rita was dancing, Radha was singing.

While he was playing, I was dancing.

- (iii) यदि किसी वाक्य में then या those days शब्द का प्रयोग समय का बोध कराने के लिए किया गया हो, तो उस वाक्य की क्रिया Past Continuous Tense में होती है।

Ex:—

He is reading then. (x)

He was reading then. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

He and I are playing cricket those days. (x)

He and I were playing cricket those days. (✓)

4. PAST PERFECT

बनावट: Subject + had + V³ +

Ex:—

The patient had died before the doctor came.

याद रखें : Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग वैसे वाक्य के लिए नहीं होता जिसमें केवल एक Subject और एक Verb होता है। इस स्थिति में वाक्य की क्रिया Simple Past में होती है।

Ex:—

I had meet him (x)

I met him. (✓)

Uses

- (i) जब Past में दो घटनाएं घटी हो तो घटना पहले घटे उसके लिए Past Perfect (S + had + V³) तथा जो बाद में घटे उसके लिए Simple Past का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:—

He reached the station after the train had Stented.

इसी प्रकार,

The Patient had died before the doctor came.

- (ii) Before का प्रयोग Past Perfect के बाद तथा Simple Past के पहले होता है जबकि After का प्रयोग Past Perfect के पहले तथा Simple Past के बाद।

Ex:—

The patient died before the doctor had come. (x)

The patient had died before the doctor came. (✓)

इसी प्रकार,

I came after he went. (x)

I came after he had gone. (✓)

- (iii) Past के Unfulfilled wish, condition, desire को व्यक्त करने के लिए I wish, if, as if, as though के साथ Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

Ex:-

I wish I had passed in the first division.

याद रखें : इस स्थिति में I wish, if, as if, as though वाले clause में कभी भी would have/could have/should have का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, लेकिन दूसरे clause के साथ इनका प्रयोग अवश्य होता है।

Ex:—

If he would have come on time, he would have caught the train. (✓)

If he had come on time, he would have caught the train. (✓)

4. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

बनावट :

Subject + had + been + V⁴ (v+ing) + O + ... + for/since + time.

Ex:—

Ram had been lying there for an hour.

Uses

- (i) इस Tense का प्रयोग वैसे कार्य के लिए होता है जो भूतकाल में ही शुरू होकर कुछ देर चलने के बाद समाप्त हो गये हो।

Ex:—

I had been reading a novel since 4 o'clock

पुनः They had been dancing for two hours.

III. FUTURE TENSE

1. SIMPLE FUTURE

बनावट : Subject + shall/will + V¹ +

Ex:—

He will do it.

I shall go home.

Uses

- (i) ऐसे कार्य के लिए जो भविष्य में होंगे।

Ex:—

I shall go to Patna.

Ram will help you.

- (ii) जब किसी वाक्य में Tomorrow, Next + year/month/week का प्रयोग हो तो वह वाक्य Simple Future में होता है।

Ex:—

He will take his examination next year.

He will do it tomorrow.

- (iii) Conditional sentence में यदि subordinate clause 'Simple Present' में हो तो उसका Principal clause 'SimpleFuture' में होता है। Ex:—



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>If you come here.</i> | <i>I shall help you.</i> |
| Subordinate clause | Principal clause |
| <i>She will come.</i> | <i>If you write to her.</i> |
| Principal clause | Subordinate clause |

याद रखें : If, as if, I wish, until, unless के ठीक बाद Simple Future का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

2. FUTURE CONTINUOUS

बनावट : Subject + shall/will + be + V⁴ (v+ ing) +

Ex—

I shall be going there.
He will be writing some letters.

Uses

- (i) ऐसे कार्य जो भविष्य में कुछ समय तक जारी रहने वाले हों।
Ex—

She will be staying there.
I shall be watching the film.

- (ii) भविष्य (Future) के सुनिश्चित कार्यक्रम या योजना (Plan) का बोध कराने के लिए।

Ex:—

Ram will be staying there till Monday.
He will be meeting me tomorrow.

3. FUTURE PERFECT

बनावट : Subject + shall/will + have + V³ +

Ex—

I shall have written a letter by this time tomorrow.
His brother will have finished the work by next month.

Uses

- (i) वैसे कार्य (action) को व्यक्त (Express) करने के लिए, जिससे यह बोध होता है कि action (कार्य) Future में किसी निर्धारित समय तक समाप्त हो चुकेगा। Ex:—

She will have come back by evening.
(वह शाम तक घर वापस आ चुकी होगी।)

I shall have finished the book by August.

(मैं अगस्त तक यह किताब समाप्त कर चुका हूँगा।)

- (ii) इस Tense के साथ समय निर्धारण करने के लिए by का प्रयोग होता है, न कि for या since का। Ex:—

I shall have finished this book since July. (x)
I shall have finished this book by July. (✓)

याद रखें : इस Tense के साथ केवल Point of time का

ही प्रयोग होता है, न कि Period of time का।

अतः I shall have come by 15th July होगा न कि 15th days.

4. FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

बनावट : Subject + shall/will + have + V⁴ (v+ ing) + O + + for/from + time.

Ex—

I shall have been looking from 4 o'clock.
Sita will have been singing from morning.

Uses

- (i) इस Tense का प्रयोग वैसे कार्य (action) को अभिव्यक्त (Express) करने के लिए होता है जो Future में किसी निश्चित समय तक जारी रहेंगे। Ex:—

He will have been playing cricket for two days. **याद रखें:** इस Tense में Point of time को अभिव्यक्ति करने के लिए from का प्रयोग होता है न कि since का।

Ex:-

Ram will have been ploughing the field since morning. (x)

Ram will have been ploughing the field from morning. (✓)

याद रखें: सामान्यतः इस Tense के साथ By + time expressing word का प्रयोग सही होता है।

Ex:—

By six o'clock I shall have been reading for four hours. (✓)



VOICE

Look at the two sentences.

The child broke the glass.

The glass was broken by the child.

प्रथम वाक्य का Subject (कर्त्ता) **The child** है। यह वाक्य प्रकट करता है कि **child** ने क्या किया अर्थात् **child** द्वारा किये गये कार्य को बताता है। इस प्रकार के verb को Active Voice का verb कहते हैं।

Passive Voice

प्रथम वाक्य में **The glass** वाक्य का Object (कर्म) है। किन्तु दूसरे वाक्य में glass कर्त्ता के रूप में रखा गया है। दूसरा वाक्य यह प्रकट नहीं करता कि glass से सम्बन्धित क्या कार्य किया गया अर्थात् क्रिया का glass पर क्या प्रभाव पड़ा (The action that the glass **suffered** or **received**)। दूसरे वाक्य में क्रिया **Passive Voice** में कहलाती है। जब हम किसी क्रिया के object को किसी वाक्य का कर्त्ता बनाकर रखते हैं, तो इस प्रकार बना वाक्य **Passive Voice** कहलाता है।

Study and note the forms of the verb in each of the sentences in Active Voice and Passive Voice.

| Active Voice | Passive Voice |
|--|--|
| He shot the tiger. | The tiger was shot by him. |
| The villagers caught the thieves. | The thief were caught by the villagers. |
| They were buying balloons. | Balloons were being bought by them. |
| He has made a mistake. | A mistake has been made by him. |
| They have won the match. | The match has been won by them. |
| They sell mangoes in the shop. | Mangoes are sold in this shop. |
| They teach Sanskrit in this school. | Sanskrit is taught in this school. |
| He is writing a letter. | A letter is being written by them. |
| Raju will post the letter. | The letter will be posted by Raju. |
| They have locked all the doors. | All the doors had been locked by them. |

The use of Passive Voice :

Look at these two sentences :

Some people built a road to connect the village to the town.

A road was build (by some people) to connect the village to the town.

यद्यपि दोनों वाक्य एक ही भाव प्रकट करते हैं किन्तु प्रथम वाक्य के स्थान पर द्वितीय वाक्य का प्रयोग करना अपेक्षाकृत अधिक उपयुक्त है क्योंकि हम सड़क के निर्माणकर्त्ता में इतनी अभिरूचि नहीं रखते जितनी कि सड़क के निर्माण में। वक्ता के दृष्टिकोण से सड़क अधिक महत्वपूर्ण है न कि उसके बनाने वाले। अतः वाक्य में A road को प्रधानता प्रदान की गयी है और उसे दूसरे वाक्य का Subject बनाया गया है तथा क्रिया Passive Voice में रखी गयी है।

Passive Voice के इस प्रकार के प्रयोग के कुछ उदाहरण निम्नलिखित हैं :-

My pocket **was picked** in the bus. (Someone did it.)

The travellers **were robbed**. (Some unknown robber did it.)

A mistake **has been made** in totalling the marks. (Who made the mistake is not the information to be expressed.)

The price of petrol **has been increased** since the first of this month. (The suppliers have done it.)

School fees **much be paid** before the 15th each month. (This is an impersonal order.)

Butter **is got** from cream. (We need not say who gets the butter.)

EXERCISE 1

Change the following sentences into the passive form. The italicised word will be the subjects. Study the examples :

Examples :

1. Somebody stole my *watch* yesterday.

My watch was stolen yesterday.

2. I sold my *car* for sixteen thousand rupees.

My car was sold for sixteen thousand rupees.



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

1. They have found out *the truth*.
2. Someone has discovered *a cure* for malaria.
3. They have invented *a new sewing machine*.
4. The teacher made him the *monitor* of the class.
5. They manufacture *good shoes* in Kanpur.
6. We did not import *foodgrains* last year.
7. Everyone appreciated *his work*.
8. People speak *different languages* in India.
9. They broadcast the *President's message* this morning.
10. You can give him *a job* in your factory.

When to use the 'by' + Noun or Pronoun :

Look at these two sentences :

This house **was built** by my uncle.

It is now **owned** by a film actor.

The thieves **were caught** by some villagers.

by + noun/pronoun किसी कार्य के कर्ता (doer or agent) का बोध कराता है। इस Phrase का प्रयोग तब करते हैं जब कि वाक्य का अर्थ पूरा करने के कर्ता (doer or agent) के विषय में सूचना देना आवश्यक हो अन्यथा इस phrase के प्रयोग करने की आवश्यकता नहीं होती। जैसे :-

This house **was built** last year.

The robbers **were caught** the next morning.

Rice **is grown** in many parts of India.

America **was discovered** in 1492.

A murder **has been committed** in that village.

EXERCISE 2

Change the following sentences into passive form. Use the words in italics as subject. Study the examples :

Examples :

1. My brother painted *that picture*.

That picture was painted by my brother.

2. Johnny shot *a bird*.

A bird was shot by Johnny.

1. Sher Shah Suri defeated *Humayun*.

2. The Government runs *many buses* between Delhi and Agra.

3. Mr. Ray gave *five rupees* to his servant.

4. Meera sang *a beautiful song* last evening.

5. Ravi Shanker's performance thrilled the *audience*.
6. My servant can post *your letter*.
7. Savita can recite a *poem* at the function.
8. The principal congratulated *him* on his success.
9. Shakespere *wrote a number of plays*.
10. A little boy *greeted* her on the road.

Sentences को Active Voice से Passive Voice तथा Passive Voice से Active Voice में परिवर्तित करने के लिए वाक्य के tense के अनुरूप क्रिया के रूप (form) में परिवर्तन किया जाता है। विभिन्न कालों (tenses) में Passive Voice के वाक्यों में क्रिया के रूपों (forms) को प्रदर्शित करने के लिए निम्न chart उपयोगी सिद्ध होगा। Chart में P.P. (Past Participle) का संक्षिप्त रूप दिखाया गया है।

| Tense | Form | Example |
|-------------|-------------|--|
| Present | am + P.P. | I am helped by my brother. |
| Simple | is + P.P. | The book is sold in the next shop. |
| | are + P.P. | Most shops are closed on Sundays. |
| Past Simple | was + P.P. | The tiger was shot. |
| | were + P.P. | Two trees were cut down yesterday. |
| Present | am + being | I am being helped by my brother. |
| | is + being | A bridge is being built across that river. |
| Continuous | + P.P. | Some films are being shown. |
| | are + being | The meeting was being addressed by the Prime Minister. |
| Past | + P.P. | The lamps were being lighted. |
| | was + being | Our car has been repaired. |
| Continuous | + P.P. | Tickets have been bought. |
| | has + been | A hospital had been opened. |
| Perfect | + P.P. | |
| | have + been | |
| Past | + P.P. | |
| | had + been | |



| | | |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|
| Perfect Simple | + P.P. will/shall + be | flags will be flown on the day. |
| Future | + P.P. | We shall be told about the date of we wedding. |
| Future | will/shall + be | The boy will have been sent up to the next class. |
| Perfect | + P.P. | We shall have been promoted to the next class. |

Chart में Passive Voice में Modal Auxiliaries के साथ क्रिया के रूप प्रदर्शित किये गये हैं।

| Active | Passive |
|---|--|
| Our boys can win the match | The match be won by our boys |
| Ants may eat the cake. | The cake may be eaten by ants. |
| We might win the cup. | The cup might be won by us. |
| He must send a reply. | A reply must be sent by him. |
| Gopal could drive the car on the mountain road. | The car could be driven on the mountain road by Gopal. |
| Dr. Shahane should see this patient. | This patient should be seen by Dr. Shahane. |
| He would recite a prayer. | A prayer would be recited by him. |
| We ought to obey our parents. | Our parents ought to be obeyed. |

EXERCISE 3

Put the following sentences in the *Passive Voice*. Use *by* + *noun* or *pronoun* only where it is needed to complete the meaning of the sentence.

1. Our team won the cup.
2. The Principal admitted Anil into the college.
3. Banks pay interest on deposits.
4. They were shooting a film.

5. They will set up two more steel plants in the next Five-Year Plan.
6. We can now remove the plates and wash them.
7. You must type these letters before five o'clock.
8. We should call a doctor.
9. Everyone should obey the laws of the country.
10. We couldn't find a taxi.

Commands and Questions in the Passive

| Active | Passive |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Hang this picture on the wall. | Let this picture be hung on the wall. |
| Switch on the lights. | Let the lights be switched on. |
| Break the lock. | Let the lock be broken. |
| Inform the police. | Let the police be informed. |
| Did you make this by hand? | Was this made by hand by you? |
| Can we send this by a messenger? | Can this be sent by a messenger? |
| Should we inform the police? | Should the police be informed? |
| Has anyone used my pen? | Has my pen been used by anyone? |
| Will the judge acquit the prisoner? | Will the prisoner be acquitted? |
| Where did you find this box? | Where was this box found? |
| How did they find solution? | How was the solution found? |
| What language do these people speak? | What language is spoken by these people? |
| Who wrote this novel? | By whom was this novel written? |

EXERCISE 4

Put these sentence in the *Passive Voice*.

1. Post this letter today.
2. Did they call a taxi?
3. Have you paid your fees?



4. Don't send the parcel now.
5. Where did they play the match?
6. How did you open it?
7. How do they work by this machine?
8. Send invitations to all the parents.
9. Why did you cut down the trees?
10. Give this letter to your father.
11. Was the cleaning the room?
12. Are they buying ribbons?
13. Will you decorate your home on your birthday?
14. Will she cook food at eight in the morning?

Here are some examples of transformation from Active to Passive.

| <i>Active</i> | <i>Passive</i> |
|---|--|
| Mr. Das teaches us English. | We are taught English by Mr. Das. English is taught to us by Mr. Das. |
| They paid him his salary. | He was paid his salary. His salary was paid to him. |
| The villagers gave him a great welcome. | He was given a great welcome by the villagers. A great welcome was given to him by the villagers. |
| The boy elected Mohan captain. | Mohan was elected captain by the boys. |
| Sunil called his dog 'Tommy'. | Sunil's dog was called 'Tommy'. |
| The news left the old man sad. | The old man was left sad by the news. |
| The discovery of oil has made the country prosperous. | The country has been made prosperous by the discovery of oil. |

The teacher made the boys stay back. The boys were made to stay back.
We saw him take the pen. He was seen taking the pen.
Suresh helped me carry the luggage. I was helped by Suresh to carry the luggage.
Parents allow their children to do what they like. Children are allowed by their parents to do what they like.
The teacher told the boys to write in the ink. The boys were told to write in ink.
The doctor advised the young man to give up smoking. The young man was advised by the doctor to give up smoking.

EXERCISE 5

Put these following sentences in the *Passive Voice*.

1. The Headmaster refused the boy admission.
2. My brother promised me his help.
3. We should teach that fellow a lesson.
4. Why did they offer him such a low salary?
5. Someone told me how go get there.
6. The judge found the prisoner guilty.
7. Woollen clothes keep us warm.
8. The children called him "Chacha Nehru".
9. The facts proved his ideas wrong.
10. We have painted the doors green.
11. We saw the man throw a stone at the car.
12. Someone must help me solve the problem.
13. The Principal allowed the boy to go home.
14. The old man urged his sons to be united.
15. They named the child 'Ram'.



NARRATION

Look at the two sentences.

"Where Can I get this book?" the boy asked his teacher.

"You can get it from the School Co-operative Book-stall," the teacher said.

हम किसी व्यक्ति द्वारा कही हुई बात को दो प्रकार से व्यक्त करते हैं। उपर्युक्त दोनों वाक्यों में किसी व्यक्ति द्वारा की गयी बात यहाँ पर दो रूपों में से एक रूप में ही व्यक्त की गयी है। इन वाक्यों में वक्ता द्वारा कहे गये शब्द मूल रूप में प्रस्तुत किये गये हैं और उन्हें Quotation mark " " के अन्दर रखा गया है। किसी व्यक्ति की कही गयी बात को अन्य व्यक्ति से इस प्रकार से कहने के ढंग को **Direct Speech** कहते हैं।

उसी वार्तालाप (Conversation) को हम दूसरे रूप में इस प्रकार प्रस्तुत करते हैं :-

The boy asked his teacher **where he could get that book.**

The teacher said **that he could get it from the School Co-operative Book-stall.**

उपर्युक्त दोनों वाक्यों में वक्ता कथन को मूल रूप में सीधे अन्य व्यक्ति के सम्मुख नहीं प्रस्तुत किया गया है अपितु कथन में **grammatical changes** (व्याकरण-सम्मत परिवर्तन) के उपरान्त उसे व्यक्त किया गया है। ये परिवर्तन निम्न हैं :-

(a) दोनों वाक्यों से Quotation Marks " " समाप्त कर दिये गये हैं।

(b) दोनों वाक्यों में वक्ता द्वारा कहे गये शब्द उपवाक्यों में बदल दिये गये हैं।

"Where can I get this book" को **Where he could get that book** तथा "You can get it from the School Co-operative Book-stall" को **that he could get it from the School Co-operative Book-stall** में बदल कर clauses बना दिये गये हैं।

(c) इन वाक्यों में उन Personal Pronouns के रूपों में परिवर्तन किये गये हैं जो **Reported Speech** में प्रयोग किये गये थे। उदाहरणार्थ **I** के स्थान पर **he** रखा गया है।

(d) Direct Speech में प्रयोग किये गये **Verb** के **tense** में भी परिवर्तन किया गया है। उदाहरणार्थ **can** के स्थान पर **could** का प्रयोग किया गया है।

(e) दूसरे वाक्य में Reported part (कही गयी बात) को प्रधान वाक्य से जोड़ने के लिए **That conjunction** (संयोजक) का प्रयोग किया गया है।

किसी व्यक्ति के विचारों को Report (कहने) करने के इस दूसरे ढंग को **Indirect or Reported Speech** कहते हैं।

Indirect or Reported Speech में वार्तालाप प्रस्तुत करने में उपर्युक्त परिवर्तनों के अतिरिक्त कुछ और भी अन्य परिवर्तन होते हैं। इन परिवर्तनों के निम्न उदाहरण हैं।

a. **Direct Speech** : He said, "I like **this** song."

Indirect Speech : He said that he liked **that** song.

Indirect Speech में बात कहते समय Direct Speech में प्रयुक्त **demonstrative this** को **that** में परिवर्तित कर दिया गया है।

b. **Direct Speech** : He said, "I shall give you this book **tomorrow**."

Indirect Speech : He said that he would give that book **the next day**.

Direct Speech में प्रयुक्त adverbial (time) **tomorrow** को **the next day** में परिवर्तित कर दिया गया है।

c. **Direct Speech** : He said, "I shall leave these papers **here**."

Indirect Speech : He said that he would leave those papers **there**.

Direct Speech में प्रयुक्त adverbial (place) **here** को Indirect Speech में **there** में परिवर्तित कर दिया गया है।

इस प्रकार हम देखते हैं कि यदि **Reporting Verb** भूतकाल (**Past Tense**) में होता है और हम किसी व्यक्ति की कही हुई बात को indirectly प्रस्तुत करना चाहते हैं तो निम्न परिवर्तन किये जाते हैं।

(a) Spoken part प्रयुक्त क्रिया को उसके Past Tense form में बदल देते हैं।

(b) Spoken part में प्रयुक्त Personal pronouns उस रूप में बदलते हैं जो कि reporting person से सम्बन्धित व्यक्तियों के लिए प्रयोग करेगा।

(c) Spoken part में प्रयुक्त **demonstratives** तथा **adverbial of time and place** उन रूपों में बदल दिये जाते हैं जिनका कि प्रयोग Reporting person करेगा।



Note : यदि reporting उसी दिन अथवा उसी स्थान पर की जाती है कि वक्ता उपस्थित हो तो time व place को व्यक्त करने वाले adverbials में परिवर्तन नहीं होते।

Direct Speech : He said to me this morning, "I shall see you *here* this evening."

Indirect Speech : He told me this morning that he would see me *here* this evening.

(d) Direct sentence (कहा गया वाक्य) **clause** में परिवर्तित कर दिया जाता है जो reporting verb का object बन जाता है।

Sequence of Tense in Indirect Speech

Direct speech में reporting verb प्रायः **Past tense (said, stated, asked, replied, etc.)** में होता है क्योंकि शायद ही कभी उस व्यक्ति के कथन को उसके बोलने के साथ दूसरे व्यक्ति से कहा जाता है और ऐसा भी बहुत कम पाया जाता है कि हम वक्ता के उस कथन को किसी से कहें कि जो वह कहने वाला होता है-

Past tense में ही हुई बात को report करते समय क्रिया के रूप में जो परिवर्तन किये जाते हैं उसके कुछ उदाहरण निम्न हैं।

a. **Direct :** He said, "**I don't** eat eggs."

Indirect : He said that he **didn't** eat eggs.

b. **Direct :** He said, "My father **likes** the company of children."

Indirect : He said that his father **liked** the company of children.

Direct Speech में प्रयुक्त **Present Simple** को Indirect Speech में **Past Simple** में परिवर्तित कर दिया गया है। किन्तु इस नियम का exception (अपवाद) भी है।

a. **Direct :** The teacher said, "The earth **rotates** on its own axis."

Indirect : The teacher said that the earth **rotates** on its own axis.

उपर्युक्त वाक्य में एक वैज्ञानिक तथ्य प्रकट किया गया है जो सार्वकालिक सत्य है। ऐसे तथ्यों को report करते समय क्रिया के tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया जाता।

b. **Direct :** He said, "**I am working hard** for the examination."

Indirect : He said that he was **working hard** for the examination.

Present Continuous को Past continuous में बदल देते हैं।

c. **Direct :** He said, "**I have seen** the Taj."

Indirect : He said that he **had seen** the Taj.

Present Perfect को Past Perfect में बदल देते हैं।

Direct : He said, "The boy **has been working** very hard."

Indirect : He said that the boy **had been working** very hard.

Present Perfect continuous को Past Perfect continuous में बदल देते हैं।

Direct : He said, "We **heard** the news **yesterday**."

Indirect : He said that he **had heard** the news **the day before**.

Simple past को Past Perfect में बदल देते हैं। इस नियम के कुछ अपवाद भी हैं।

Direct : The teacher said, "Gandhiji **died** in January 1948."

Indirect : The teacher said that Gandhiji **died** in January 1948.

उपर्युक्त वाक्य में Spoken sentence में भूतकाल से सम्बन्धित एक ऐतिहासिक तथ्य प्रकट किया गया है। अतः ऐसी स्थिति में क्रिया के tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया गया है।

Direct : He said, "When the game **began**, it **started** raining."

Indirect : He said that when the game **began** it **started** raining.

यहाँ पर Spoken sentence में भूतकाल में एक ही समय पर दो कार्यों के होने का प्रसंग है। ऐसी स्थिति में क्रिया के काल (tense) में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया गया है।

Direct : He said, "We **said**, "We **had locked** the door."

Indirect : He said that they **had locked** the door.

यदि Spoken sentence में क्रिया Past Perfect Tense में होती है तो उसके रूप (**tense form**) में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता।

Direct : He said, "We **were waiting** for an hour."

Indirect : He said that they **had been waiting** for an hour.

Past Continuous Tense को Past Perfect Continuous Tense में बदल देते हैं।



Direct : He said, "Ram **will** see you again."
Indirect : He said that Ram **would** see him again.
Direct : He said, "I **shall** pay back the money in a month."
Indirect : He said that he **would** pay back the money in a month.

Future time को व्यक्त करने वाली क्रियाओं को उनके **Past Tense form** में बदल देते हैं।

Direct : He said, "I **can** do it myself."
Indirect : He said that he **could** do it himself.
Direct : He said, "The boys **may** go away."
Indirect : He said that the boys **might** go away.

Modal Auxiliaries को उनके **Past Tense form** में बदल देते हैं।

EXERCISE 1

Rewrite the following sentences using Indirect Speech.

1. The porter said, "The Bombay Mail is running late by forty minutes."
2. The doctor said to me, "The condition of your father is serious."
3. The shop-keeper said, "The shop closes at 9 pm."
4. The students said, "Our Board examination will begin from March 18."
5. Anil said to his teacher, "Satish has topped the list of successful candidates this year."
6. The fruit-seller said, "These mangoes are selling at three rupees a kilo."
7. The clerk said to the headmaster, "Mr. Verma has been ill for the last three days."
8. Meera said to her mother, "I visited my uncle yesterday."
9. The host said, "The guests are expected at 8 pm for the dinner."
10. You said to me, "I will give a book."

जब spoken sentence को indirect में बदलते हैं तब **demonstratives, adverbials of time and place** में जो परिवर्तन किये जाते हैं वे निम्न तालिका में प्रदर्शित किये गये हैं।

| | |
|-------|----------|
| this | that |
| these | those |
| here | there |
| now | then |
| today | that day |

| | |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| to night | that night |
| last week | the previous week |
| tomorrow | the next day |
| yesterday | the previous day, the day before |
| ago | before, earlier |
| next week | the following week |

Reporting of Commands

Direct : Mr. Menon said to Mohan, "Put this book on my table."
Indirect : Mr. Menon asked Mohan to put that book on his table.
Direct : The clerk said to the manager, "Please give me leave for a day."
Indirect : The clerk **requested** the manager **to give** him leave for a day.
Direct : The captain said to the soldiers, "Go forward."
Indirect : The captain **commanded** (or **ordered**) the soldiers **to go** forward.
Direct : The doctor said to the patient, "Take the medicine regularly for three days."
Indirect : The doctor **advised** the patient to take the medicine regularly for three days.

उपर्युक्त वाक्यों में यह प्रदर्शित किया गया है कि **Commands (order, request, command, advice etc.)** को spoken sentences में किस प्रकार कहते हैं।

यह बात स्मरणीय है कि प्रत्येक वाक्य के spoken sentence के verb को indirect speech में **to+verb phrase** में बदल दिया गया। उदाहरणार्थ **"Go forward"** को **"to go forward"** में बदल दिया है।

इस बात पर भी ध्यान दें कि Indirect Speech में क्रिया **said** के स्थान पर **asked, requested, commanded, advised etc.** क्रियाएँ **command** के nature (प्रकृति) के अनुरूप रखी गयी हैं। The captain said to the soldiers to go forward कहना उपयुक्त न होगा।

Negative commands को Indirect Speech में व्यक्त करने के कुछ उदाहरण निम्न हैं।

Direct : The teacher said to the boys, "Don't write on both sides of your answer sheets."



Indirect : The Teacher asked the boys **not to write** on both sides of their answer sheets.

Direct : The captain said to the soldiers, "Don't let the enemy pass."

Indirect : The captain ordered his men **not to let** the enemy pass.

EXERCISE 2

A. Suppose these commands were given to you. Supply the speaker and report these Commands using the reporting verb given against each.

Examples :

1. Clean the table. (asked)
She asked me to clean the table.
2. Come again. (told)
He told me to come again.
1. Wash your hands. (advised)
2. Have a cup of tea. (asked)
3. Come again (requested)
4. Stop the noise. (ordered)
5. Buy yourself a new pen. (advised)
6. Write neatly. (told)
7. Lift this box for me, please. (requested)
8. Keep the ring carefully. (advised)
9. Learn this open by heart. (asked)
10. Be quiet. (told)

EXERCISE 3

B. Put the following *negative commands* into Reported Speech. Supply the Speakers. Here are some examples :

Examples :

1. Don't eat with dirty hands.
2. Don't shut the door.
I asked you not to shut the door.
1. Don't put off the lights.
2. Don't leave the tap running
3. Don't read in the dim light.
4. Don't go out in rain.
5. Don't pick those flowers.
6. Don't sit there.
7. Don't open the window.
8. Don't give him your exercise book.

9. Don't tell me lies.

10. Don't smoke.

Reporting of Questions

(a) Yes or No questions :

Direct : The doctor asked the young man, "Do you smoke?"

Indirect : The doctor asked the young man **whether** (or **if**) he smoked.

Direct : "Is this the way to Sangam.?" The pilgrim asked the policeman.

Indirect : The pilgrim asked the police man **whether** (or **if**) that was the way to Sangam.

Question को **Whether** or **If** से प्रारम्भ होने वाले clause में बदल देते हैं। वाक्य के अन्त में question mark का भी प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता।

EXERCISE 4

A. Supply the speakers and report these questions.

Examples :

1. Are you tired?
Mohan *asked me if* I was tired.
2. Will you come on Monday?
My friend *asked me whether* I would go on Monday.
1. Do you know her address?
2. Don't you ever go for a swim?
3. Haven't you finished that story yet ?
4. Have you ever been to Bombay ?
5. Isn't Sheela your sister ?
6. Didn't you eat your breakfast?
7. Are you a vegetarian ?
8. Hasn't your father gone on tour ?
9. Won't you have dinner with us ?
10. Was he absent today ?

(b) Question – Word questions :

Direct : The boys asked the teacher, "**Who is going** to preside over the function?"

Indirect : The boys asked the teacher **who was going** to preside over the function.

Direct : The policeman asked the man, "**Where do you wish** to go ?"



Indirect : The policeman asked the man **where he wished** to go.

Direct : Mr. Das asked his wife **why is the child crying**.

Indirect : Mr. Das asked his wife **why the child was crying**.

उपर्युक्त प्रत्येक वाक्य में question-word से प्रारम्भ होने वाले question को indirect speech में question के **question-word** से प्रारम्भ होने वाले **clause** में बदल दिया गया है अन्य परिवर्तनों के अतिरिक्त question pattern को statement pattern में बदल देते हैं।

EXERCISE 5

A. Supply the speakers and report these questions. Study the examples :

Examples :

1. What is your brother's name ?
Mr. Roy *asked me* what my brother's name was.
2. Who broke my pen ?
Father *asked me* who had broken his pen.
1. How old are you ?
2. Where do you live ?
3. How is your mother ?
4. What are your plans for the vacation ?
5. When is your birthday ?
6. When will Mr. Roy be free ?
7. Who cleans your shoes ?
8. Who is coming to dance tonight ?
9. Why did you use my pen ?
10. Why don't you study hard ?

(b) Complete these reported questions. Study the examples first :

Examples :

1. who my friend was.
He asked me who my friend was.
2. They inquired why They inquired why she did not come.
3. Hari asked him if
Hari asked him if he knew the way.
1. where I had studied.
2. whose book that was.
3. I asked him why
4. She inquired how

5. He asked my servant if
6. when the next train left.
7. where his house was.
8. whether I had done my homework.
9. We want to know why
10. They asked us whether

EXERCISE 6

Rewrite the following sentences using Indirect Speech.

1. "I should advise you to join B. Com." the teacher said to the boy.
2. "Living costs are very high in the city," Mr. Das said to his friend.
3. "You should not speak for both sides," the teacher said to the boys.
4. "We had a nice holiday last summer," Leela told her teacher.
5. "You may use my car for the picnic," Mr. Sohan told his son.
6. "Post these letters today," the manager said to the clerk.
7. "Don't take the trouble of coming all the way," I said to the boy.
8. "Let's go to a movie," Mohan said to his friend Ashok.
9. "Taste this sweet and tell me how it is," Mrs. Ram said to her daughter.
10. "Don't walk on the flower beds," Mrs. Das said to the children.
11. "Do you want a fountain pen or a ball-point pen ?" the shopkeeper asked the boy.
12. "Can you answer this question ?" the teacher asked Ashok.
13. "Who is going to lead the team ?" the boys asked. The cinema.
14. "When does the train leave ?" the man enquired.
15. "How many planets are there in the solar system ?" the Inspector asked the class.
16. "Whose painting is this ?" the visitor asked the guide.
17. "Please excuse me this time," the boy said to his father.
18. "The Gita says," Do your duty.



QUESTION TAGS

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें :

1. तुम मुझे प्यार करते हो, न ? You love me, don't you ?
2. वह पत्र लिखता था, न ? He wrote a letter, didn't he ?
3. तुम नहीं पढ़ते हो, न ? You do not read, do you ?
4. वह सच बोलता है, न ? He speaks the truth, doesn't he ?
5. उसने तुम्हें धोखा दिया है, न ? He has deceived you, hasn't he ?
6. वह तुम्हारा भाई है, न ? He is your brother, isn't he ?
7. वे लोग झूठ नहीं बोलते हैं, न ? They don't tell me a lie, do they ?
8. आदित्य चाय नहीं पीता है, न ? Aditya does not take tea, does he ?
9. मुझे साईकिल है, न ? I have a bicycle, haven't I ?
10. उसे साहस था, न ? He had courage, hadn't he ?

उपरोक्त Sentences का प्रयोग सामान्यतः बोलचाल की भाषा में होता है। Speaker (वक्ता) इस प्रकार के sentences का प्रयोग अपने अनुमान/विचार आदि को express (व्यक्त) करने के लिए करते हैं। लेकिन साथ ही अपनी जिज्ञासा/संदेह के कारण की पुष्टि Audience (श्रोता) से चाहते हैं। इस प्रकार के अंग्रेजी तथा second part (प्रथम भाग) Assertive/Imperative होता है तथा second part (दूसरा भाग) Interrogative होता है। यह second part (दूसरा भाग) Question tag

कहलाता है। अब आपके मन में एक प्रश्न उठ सकता है कि Question तथा Question Tag में क्या अंतर/फर्क होता है।

Question तथा Question Tags में फर्क : Questions

Questions Tags

1. Question complete (पूर्ण) Sentences होते हैं।
1. जबकि Question tags sentences के last (अंत) में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।
2. इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से होता है।
2. इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से नहीं होता है।
3. जब हम किसी बात को नहीं जानते हैं तो
3. परन्तु जब हमारे सामने कोई ऐसा तथ्य/अनुमान/Questions का प्रयोग करते हैं।
- विचार आता है जिस पर हम पूर्णतः आश्वस्त नहीं रहते हैं तो इसकी पुष्टि के लिए Question Tags का प्रयोग करते हैं।
4. इसका प्रयोग औपचारिक रूप से किया जाता है।
4. इसका प्रयोग अनौपचारिक रूप से किया जाता है।
5. Question का प्रयोग करने वाला व्यक्ति
5. Question Tags का प्रयोग करने वाला व्यक्ति Audience (श्रोता) से यह उम्मीद रखता है कि Audience (श्रोता) से यह उम्मीद रखता है कि वह उसके प्रश्न का जवाब देगा।
- उसके Statement (कथन) की पुष्टि करेगा।

Contracted forms of auxiliary verbs + Not

Auxiliary verbs + Not

1. Do + not
3. did + not
5. Is + not
7. has + not
9. had + not

Short forms used in question tags

- don't
- didn't
- isn't
- hasn't
- hadn't

Auxiliary verbs + Not

2. does + not
4. am I not...
6. are + not
8. have + not
10. was + not

Short forms used in question tags

- doesn't
- aren't I..... ?
- aren't
- haven't
- wasn't



| | | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------------|----------|
| 11. were + not | weren't | 12. shall + not | shalln't |
| 13. will + not | won't | 14. can + not | can't |
| 15. should + not | shouldn't | 16. would + not | wouldn't |
| 17. could + not | couldn't | 18. may + not | mayn't |
| 19. might + not | mightn't | 20. ought + not | oughtn't |
| 21. must + not | mustn't | 22. used + not | usedn't |
| 23. need + not | needn't | 24. dare + not | daren't |

Formate of Question tags

- (i) Affirmative – Auxiliary Verbs + Subject + ?
- (ii) Negative – Auxiliary verbs + n't + Subject + ?

Question tags बनाने समय नीचे दी गई बातों का ध्यान रखें :

1. Question tags बनाने में main verb जैसे – go, drink, come etc. का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे –
He writes a letter, don't write he? (✗)
He writes a letter, doesn't he? (✓)
He does not drink milk, does drink he?(✗)
He does not drink milk, does he?(✓)
2. Question tags में subject के रूप में pronoun or there का प्रयोग होता है।
3. Question tags में subject के रूप में noun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
4. Question tags में Auxiliary verbs or Auxiliary verbs + n't का प्रयोग given sentence (दिये गये वाक्य) के Tense या Question tag में प्रयुक्त होने वाले subject के Number तथा Person पर निर्भर करता है।
5. किसी sentence के last (अंत) में Question tag का प्रयोग हो या करना हो तो Question tag के Auxiliary verbs का चुनाव Sentence में प्रयुक्त Auxiliary verb पर निर्भर करता है।
6. किसी question tag में Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो Question tag में do/does/did का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है।

How to Make Question Tags

Question tags बनाने का नियम :

(Rule 1) : Affirmative sentence का question tag negative होता है अर्थात् *Auxiliary verb + n't + subject (A.P.) + ?* का प्रयोग Question Tag में होता है।

Note : A.P. = Appropriate pronoun (उपर्युक्त सर्वनाम) जैसे –

- He writes a letter, *doesn't he* ?
 She is ugly, *isn't she* ?
 He came here last night, *didn't he* ?
 You are courageous, *aren't you* ?
 She was a salesgirl, *wasn't she* ?
 I am wrong, *aren't I* ?
 You will help me, *won't you* ?
 He spoke the truth, *didn't he* ?
 He has done his homework, *hasn't he* ?
 He had gone there, *hadn't he* ?

(Rule 2) : Negative sentence का question tag Affirmative होता है अर्थात् *Auxiliary verb + subject (A.P.) + ?* का प्रयोग Question Tag में होता है। जैसे –



She does not make a noise, *do I ?*
I don't drink wine, *do I ?*
You are not laborious, *are you ?*
She did not see me, *did she ?*
He will not tell me a story, *will he ?*
I am not right, *am I ?*
He did not tell a lie, *did he ?*
He has not helped her, *has he ?*
You had not played well, *had you ?*
She was not lazy, *was she ?*

(Rule 3) : यदि किसी sentence में negative words जैसे- Neither, no, not, never, none, no one, nobody, nothing, few little, hardly, rarely, scarcely, seldom etc... का प्रयोग हो तो Sentence का अर्थ Negative होता है इसे Negative sentence माना जाता है अतः इसका Question tag Affirmative होता है। अर्थात् *Auxiliary verb + Subject (A.P.) + ?* का प्रयोग question tag में होता है। जैसे-

We have no friends, *have we ?*
No one knows this matter, *do they ?*
They have nothing, *have they ?*
Nobody is perfect, *are they ?*
A barking dog seldom bites, *does he ?*
Nothing is yours, *is it ?*
Few students have come to attend the class, *have they ?*
Neither of us helped you, *did we ?*
I know little about you, *do I ?*
It is rarely found, *is it ?*

Note : A few तथा a little positive meaning रखता है। इसका प्रयोग किसी sentence में हो तो वह Affirmative sentence होता है। अतः इसका Question tag negative होता है। जैसे-

I have a little money, *haven't I ?*
मुझे थोड़ा धन है, न ?
I have read a few books, *haven't I ?*
मैंने कुछ पुस्तकें पढ़ी हैं, न ?

(Rule 4) : Affirmative Imperative sentence का *question tag affirmative* – 'will you' या *negative* – 'won't you ?' दोनों होता है। जैसे-

Switch on the radio, *will you ?*
Switch on the radio, *won't you ?*
Please give me money, *will you ?*
Please give me money, *won't you ?*
Kindly post this letter, *will you ?*
Kindly post this letter, *won't you ?*

(Rule 5) : Negative Imperative sentence का *question tag affirmative* – 'will you' होता है। जैसे-

Don't open the window, *will you ?*
Don't spit here, *will you ?*
Don't switch off the light, *will you ?*
Don't be late tomorrow, *will you ?*
Don't make a noise, *will you ?*



(Rule 6) : Affirmative Imperative sentence का प्रयोग *more urgency* (ज्यादा अत्यावश्यक) के भाव को express करने के लिए हो तो question tag – Negative '*won't you ?*' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

Remember to shut the window, *won't you ?*

Be careful while solving the sums, *won't you ?*

(Rule 7) : यदि Imperative sentence में प्रयुक्त verb से डाँट-फटकार के भाव का बोध हो तो question tag – '*can't you ?*' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

Use your own mind, *can't you ?*

Use your own book, *can't you ?*

(Rule 8) : यदि Imperative sentence Let us या Let's से स्टार्ट हो तो इससे प्रस्ताव/सुझाव (Proposal/Suggestion) का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए question tag – '*shall we ?*' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

Let us dance together, *shall we ?*

Let us help her, *shall we ?*

Let us do this work, *shall we ?*

Let's go there, *shall we ?*

Let's read the Gita, *shall we ?*

(Rule 9) : यदि Imperative sentence Let me/him/her/them/Shyam/Veena etc... से स्टार्ट हो तो question tag – '*will you ?*' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

Let us do this work, *will you ?*

Let her be my beloved, *will you ?*

Let him go, *will you ?*

Let them do their homework, *will you ?*

Let Veena watch T.V., *will you ?*

(Rule 10) : यदि किसी sentence में used to का प्रयोग हो तो question tag में *usen't/didn't* का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

He used to come here, *usen't he ?*

He used to come here, *didn't he ?*

They usedn't to come here, *used they ?*

They usedn't to come here, *did they ?*

(Rule 11) : Dare not / daren't तथा need not / neen't का प्रयोग marginal Auxiliary verbs के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग किसी sentence में हो तो उसका question tag – affirmative – '*dare/need + subject (A.P.) + ?*' के रूप में होता है। जैसे–

He daren't come here, *dare he ?*

I needn't go there, *need I ?*

He need not work hard, *need he ?*

You daren't touch the naked wire, *dare they ?*

(Rule 12) : Dare तथा need का प्रयोग main verh के रूप में किसी sentence में हो तो उसका question tag इस प्रकार बनाया जाता है। जैसे–

He daren't to oppose his father, *doesn't he ?*

She needs your note book, *doesn't she ?*

We needed your help, *didn't we ?*



She dared to abuse me, *didn't she* ?
 You don't dare to go there, *do you* ?
 They do not need to go there, *do they* ?
 He did not need to read the Gita, *did he* ?
 I don't dare to beat him, *do I* ?
 Nobody will dare to beat me, *will they* ?
 He will need nothing, *will he* ?

Note : (i) Negative question tag में Auxiliary verbs + not के Contracted form (संक्षिप्त रूप) – Auxiliary verb + n't का प्रयोग होता है।

(ii) I am your best teacher. का question tag – negative – '*aren't I*?' का प्रयोग होता है न कि '*amn't I*?' का।

(iii) I am your best teacher. का question tag – affirmative – '*am I*?' का प्रयोग होता है न कि '*am I*?' का।

How to select the Subjects the Question tags

Question tag बनाते समय subject के selection (चुनाव/चयन) में हम लोगों को कनफ्यूजन होता है। इन्हीं कनफ्यूजन को समाप्त करने के लिए हम लोग Question tags के subjects के चयन संबंधित अध्ययन करेंगे।
Question tags के subjects का selection (चुनाव/चयन) इस प्रकार किया जाता है।

(Rule 1) : यदि किसी sentence का subject– personal pronoun हो तो question tag का subject वही Personal pronoun होता है। जैसे–

They write, *don't they* ?
 He reads the Ramayana, *doesn't he* ?
 You know me, *don't you* ?
 We did our homework, *didn't we* ?
 I did not see her yesterday, *did I* ?

(Rule 2) : यदि किसी sentence का subject– noun हो तो question tag का subject प्रयुक्त Noun के number, person तथा gender के मुताबिक he/she/it/they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

Binay and Sudhir are friends, *aren't they* ?
 Bhavna is an intelligent girl, *isn't she* ?
 Rudransh has a ball, *hasn't he* ?
 The sofaset was not strong enough, *was it* ?
 The girls were playing kho-kho, *weren't they* ?

(Rule 3) : यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में there, one, this/that, these/those का प्रयोग हो तो Question tag में subjects के रूप में क्रमशः there, one, it तथा they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे–

There is a book on the table, *isn't there* ?
 One cannot do this sum, *can one* ?
 This is your book, *isn't it* ?
 That is my table, *isn't it* ?
 These are your caps, *aren't they* ?
 Those are your buffaloes, *weren't they* ?



Note : one, this/that, these/those का प्रयोग noun के पहले हो तो ये Adjectives होते हैं। इसका प्रयोग sentence के Subject के रूप में हो तो Question tag में Subject के रूप में one, this/that, these/those के बाद प्रयुक्त noun के number, person तथा gender के मुताबिक he/she/it/they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे-

One girl can do this work, *can't she* ?

This man always disturbed me, *didn't he* ?

This pen is useless, *isn't it* ?

That boy has no knowledge, *has he* ?

These books are yours, *aren't they* ?

Those women were beautiful, *weren't they* ?

(Rule 4) : यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में no one, any one, someone, everyone, everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody का प्रयोग हो तो Question tag में Subject के रूप में they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे-

Someone stole my watch, *didn't they* ?

Anyone can lift this box, *can't they* ?

Everybody is the master of his fate, *aren't they* ?

Nobody has seen God, *have they* ?

Some body knocked at the door, *didn't they*?

(Rule 5) : यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में everything, something, anything तथा nothing का प्रयोग हो तो Question tag में Subject के रूप में 'it' का प्रयोग होता है न कि they का। जैसे-

Everything looks beautiful, *doesn't it*?

Nothing is yours, *is it* ?

Something was there, *wasn't it* ?

Anything can be done for her, *can't it* ?

(Rule 6) : यदि किसी sentence के subject के रूप में All of us/you/them; None of us/you.them; one of us/you/them; anyone of us/you/them; some of us/you/them; most of us/you/them; everyone of us/you/them; either of us/you/them; neither of us/you/them का प्रयोग हो तो Question tag में Subjects के रूप में क्रमशः we, you तथा they का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे-

All of us can do this sum, *can't we*?

All of you can do this sum, *can't you* ?

All of them can do this sum, *can't they* ?

Either of you is innocent, *aren't you* ?

Neither of us was laborious, *were we* ?

None of them have seen the Red For, *have they* ?

Most of you are honest, *aren't you* ?

Most of them don't know this, *do they* ?

Some of us are intelligent, *aren't we* ?

Everyone of them has courage, *haven't they* ?



ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

- Being unable to pay one's debt. - Insolvent (दिवालिया)
- The study of the functions of the body - Physiology (शरीर शास्त्र)
- The science of foretelling events by stars. - Astrology (ज्योतिष विज्ञान)
- Government by officials in a state - Bureaucracy (नौकरशाही)
- An office without any work but high pay. - Sinecure (सेवाशून्य वैतनिक)
- A medicine to counteract the effect of a poison. - Antidote (विषहर)
- An admirer of art. - Dilettante (कलाप्रेमी)
- A man having the qualities of women. - Effeminate (स्त्रीस्वभावक)
- That which cannot be moved - Immobile (निश्चल)
- The study of insects. - Entomology (कीटशास्त्र)
- Word for word. - Verbatim (शाब्दिक)
- Wish to do good to others - Benevolence (परोपकार)
- Whose meaning is difficult to understand - Abstruse (दुर्बोध, गूढ़)
- Way out for water or steam. - Outlet (निर्गम द्वारा)
- Want of sleep. - Insomnia (अनिद्रा)
- Usual behaviour of a social group - Custom (प्रथा, रिवाज)
- Use of mild words in place of words required by truth. - Euphemism (कोमल वचन)
- Troops trained for being dropped by parachute. - Paratroops (छतरी सेना)
- Touch or stroke lovingly. - Fondle (दुलारना)
- A traditional story related to deities. - Caress (लाड़ प्यार करना)
- That which is pig like. - Myth (पौराणिक कथा)
- Thing to be corrected in a printed book. - Porcine (सुअर जैसा)
- Things taken by robbers. - Corrigendum (शुद्धिकर पत्र)
- That which is lion like. - Booty (लूट का माल)
- That which is fox like. - Leonine (सिंह जैसा)
- That which is dog like. - Vulpine (लोमड़ी जैसा धूर्त)
- That which exists separately from other people. - Canine (श्वान जैसा)
- That which cannot be perceived by touch. - Independent (स्वतंत्र)
- That which cannot be calculated. - Intangible (अस्पृश्य)
- That which can be rooted out. - Incalculable (अगणनीय)
- Study of the development of plants and animals from earlier forms. - Eradicable (उन्मूलनीय)
- Study of oceans and their phenomena. - Geneology (वंशानुक्रम)
- Study of law. - Oceanography (समुद्र विज्ञान)
- Study of fossils. - Nomology (विधि-विज्ञान)
- Study of ancient things like tombs, buried towns. - Palaentology (जीवाश्म विज्ञान)
- - Archaeology (पुरातत्व विज्ञान)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- Strong desire for food, wealth. - Greed (लालच, लोभ)
- Strong dislike between two persons. - Antipathy (घृणा)
- Stream flowing into another big river. - Tributary (सहायक नदी)
- Stealing from the writings of others. - Plagiarism (साहित्यिक चोरी)
- Statement that is obviously true. - Platitude (सामान्योक्ति)
- That which can be easily believed. - Credible (विश्वसनीय)
- That which cannot be put out or extinguished. - Inextinguishable (जिसे बुझाया नहीं जा सकता)
- That which cannot be satisfied. - Insatiable (अतृप्त)
- That which cannot be erased or removed. - Indelible (अमिट)
- That which can easily be curved without breaking. - Flexible (लचीला)
- That which cannot be corrupted. - Incorruptible (ईमानदार)
- To escape from hard realities. - Es...pism (पलायनवाद)
- The system which is observed to do progress or reform. - Reformism (सुधारवाद)
- Temple dedicated to all the gods. - Pantheon (सर्वेश्वर मंदिर)
- Talk that brings bad reputation to somebody. - Scandal (बदनामी)
- The study of population. - Demography (जनसांख्यिकी)
- The study of physical phenomenon of lakes. - Limnology (सरोवर विज्ञान)
- Spreading by infection. - Infectious (संक्रामक)
- Specialist in mental or emotional disturbance. - Psychiatrist (मनोरोग विशेषज्ञ)
- Speak in a very low tone. - Whisper (फुसफुसाना)
- Something that is hidden. - Mystery (रहस्य)
- Somebody that foretells the coming of something. - Harbinger (दि)
- Soldiers on big guns mounted on wheels. - Artillery (तोप चलाने वाला सैनिक, तोपखाना)
- So deep that the bottom cannot be reached. - Unfathomable (अथाह/अगाध)
- A small shop that sells fashionable clothes, cosmetics etc. - Boutique (दूकान)
- Shamelessly rude. - Impudent (निर्लज्ज, ढीठ)
- Serious crime like murder, arson. - Felony (महाअपराध)
- Send rays of light or heat. - Radiate (विकिरण करना)
- Send back a criminal into custody for further investigation. - Remand (हवालात में वापस भेजना)
- Secret Place difficult to access. - Recess (गुप्त स्थान)
- Secret agreement for a fraudulent purpose. - Collusion (कपटसंधि, जालसाजी)
- Search in the dark. - Grope/Fumble (टटोलना)
- Search for something. - Quest (खोज, अन्वेषण)
- Secret religious meeting. - Conventicle (गुप्त धार्मिक सभा)
- Sea with a group of many islands. - Archipelago (द्वीप समूह)
- A signature on the back of a paper or cheque. - Endorsement (हस्ताक्षर)
- Showing contemptuous indifference. - Supercilious (घमंडी)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- A short summary of a book or speech. - Epitome (सारांश)
- Signal under martial law for people to remain indoors. - Curfew (कर्फ्यू)
- Showing deep sorrow for wrong doing. - Contrite (प्रायश्चित्त करने वाला)
- A short saying or poem which express an idea in a very clever and amusing way. - Epigram (चुटकुला, व्यंग्य कविता)
- A short journey for pleasure - Excursion (सैर-सपाटा)
- A short expression of general truth. - Proverb, Dictum, Maxim, Adage (कहावत)
- A short amusing story about some real person or event. - Anecdote (किस्सा)
- Scornful and contemptuous language. - Opprobrium (अपमानजनक भाषा)
- Science of weight. - Metrology (माप विज्ञान)
- Science of time. - Horology (समय विज्ञान)
- Science of writing and compiling a dictionary. - Lexicography (शब्दकोष विज्ञान)
- Science of the races of mankind and their relation to one another - Ethnology (मानव जाति विज्ञान)
- Science of the physical structure of the body. - Anatomy (शरीर रचना विज्ञान)
- Science of the habits of living things in relation to their environment. - Ecology (परिस्थिति विज्ञान)
- Science of the constitution of the whole universe - Cosmography (विश्व रचना विज्ञान)
- Science of the causes of diseases. - Etiology/Aetiology (कारण विज्ञान)
- Science of mankind as an animal. - Anthropology (मानवशास्त्र)
- Science of mechanical and industrial arts. - Technology (शिल्प विज्ञान)
- Science of healthy living. - Hygiene (स्वास्थ्य विज्ञान)
- Science of inscriptions. - Epigraphy (पुरालेख शास्त्र)
- Science of human beauty. - Kalology (सौंदर्य विज्ञान)
- Science of fixing dates. - Chronology (कालक्रम विज्ञान)
- Science of crimes and criminals. - Criminology (अपराध विज्ञान)
- Study of coins - Numismatics (मुद्रा शास्त्र)
- Science of climate - Climatology (जलवायु विज्ञान)
- Science of blood - Haematology (रुधिर विज्ञान)
- Science of birds. - Ornithology (पक्षी विज्ञान)
- Science dealing with the proper use of terms. - Terminology (शब्दावली विज्ञान)
- Science dealing with heredity. - Genetics (आनुवंशिक विज्ञान)
- Science and technology of metals. - Metallurgy (धातुकर्म विज्ञान)
- Science and philosophy of human law. - Jurisprudence (विधि शास्त्र)
- Science and art of preparing and making good food. - Gastronomy (उत्तम आहार विज्ञान)
- Science and art of flying in aircraft. - Aviation (विमानन)
- School for very young children - Kindergarten
- Say in advance what is likely to happen. - Forecast/predict/Foretell (भविष्यवाणी करना)
- Say aloud from memory. - recite (सस्वर पाठ करना)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- Saving of property from loss by fire. - Salvage (उबार, आग से सम्पत्ति की रक्षा)
- Salt water lake separated from the sea by sand banks. - Lagoon (लैगून)
- Rules for formal behaviour among people. - Etiquette (शिष्टाचार/उपचार)
- Room for washing kitchen utensils. - Scullery (रसोई के बर्तन माँजने की जगह)
- Roof supported by columns at the entrance of a buildings. - Portico/porch (द्वारमंडप)
- Ritual washing of the body. - Ablution (धार्मिक स्नान)
- Rising in arms against an establishment/government - Insurrection/Rebellion (विद्रोह)
- Rise or fall in the level of the sea. - Tide (ज्वार-भाटा)
- Right or advantage available to a person. - Privilege (सुविधा/विशेषाधिकार)
- Reward for a work or service. - Remuneration (पारिश्रमिक, मेहनताना)
- Return to one's own country. - Repatriate (देश को लौटना)
- Return the same sort of ill treatment. - Retaliate (बदला लेना, प्रतिशोध लेना)
- Reduction in a tax or debt. - Rebate (छूट)
- Religious discourse. - Sermon (उपदेश)
- Reserved in speech. - Reticent (अल्पभाषी)
- Responsible according to law. - Liable (उत्तरदायी)
- Restore to former position. - Rehabilitate (पुनःस्थापित करना)
- Resulting in death or ending in disaster. - Fatal (मृत्यु का कारण)
- Relation between different aspects of a thing. - Perspective (परिपेक्ष्य)
- Reasoning power of the mind. - Intellect (विचार शक्ति)
- Receiving guests warmly. - Hospitality (अतिथ्य सत्कार)
- Record of events in the order of their happenings. - Chronicle (इतिहास)
- To raise a pattern or design on the surface of something. - Emboss (उभरी नक्कशी करना)
- Quick to judge and understand. - Perspicacious (स्पष्ट बुद्धि वाला, wise)
- Question or problem difficult to answer or understand - Puzzle/Riddle/Enigma (पहेली/कठिन प्रश्न)
- Put under the surface of water - Submerge (पानी में डूबना)
- Put off for a future time. - Postpone/Procrastinate (स्थगित करना)
- Put into the form of a code. - Codify (संकेतबद्ध करना)
- Pull out of usual shape. - Distort (विकृत करना, तोड़ना)
- Public merry making and feasting - Carnival (आनंदोत्सव, मनोरंजक मेला)
- Public activity which take place in a very elaborate, colourful and expensive way. - Extravaganza (अतिशायी नाटक)
- Place of good climate for invalids. - Asylum (आश्रम, शरण)
- Property left to someone by a will - Legacy (पैतृक संपत्ति)
- Property inherited from one's father - Patrimony (बपौती)
- Producing a lot of books or other things. - Prolific (बहुफलदायक)
- Process of sewing designs on cloth or other materials. - Embroidery (कशीदाकारी)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- Principle that the war should and could be abolished
- Habit of independent thought
- Prevention of loss, waste, damage.
- Prevent from being carried out.
- Pretence of having a virtuous character
- Present from or before birth.
- Marriage of God.
- Lover of dogs.
- Loss of memory.
- A group of talkative girls/women.
- Guided by one's sense of duty.
- Gust of wind.
- Handwriting that can be easily read.
- Happening at the sametime.
- Government run by a dictator.
- Government by person of highest social order.
- Government by intelligentsia.
- Government by the rich and the powerful class.
- Government by officials.
- Government by elected representatives
- Government by elected representatives without a monarch.
- Government by divine laws.
- Government by a king/queen
- Government by a few people
- Governing body of a university.
- Hater of books.
- Hater of learning
- Hater of marriage.
- Having more than one meaning
- Imaginary ailments (disease).
- Offering made to God.
- An official agreement to a proposal.
- Gathering of all things.
- An official announcement issued to the press.
- An official counting of the population.
- One who analyses handwriting.
- One who attacks.
- One who can't be corrected.
- A garland of flowers.
- Pacifism (शांतिवाद)
- Individualism (व्यक्तिवाद)
- Conservation (संरक्षण)
- Circumvent (लागू न होने देना)
- Hypocrisy (पाखण्ड, आडंबर)
- Congenital (जन्मजात, सहज)
- Theogamy (ईश विवाह)
- Canophilist (कुत्तों का शैकीन)
- Amnesia (स्मृति लोप)
- Caggle (स्त्रियों का समूह)
- Conscientious (कर्तव्यनिष्ठ)
- Draught (हवा का झोंका)
- Legible (पढ़नीय)
- Simultaneous (समकालिक)
- Dictatorship (तानाशाही)
- Aristocracy (कुलीनतंत्र)
- Meritocracy (बुद्धिजीवियों की सरकार)
- Plutocracy (धनिकतंत्र)
- Bureaucracy (नौकरशाही)
- Democracy (प्रजातंत्र)
- Republic (गणतंत्र)
- Theocracy (धर्मतंत्र)
- Monarchy (राजतंत्र)
- Oligarchy (अल्पतंत्र)
- Senate (अधिसभा)
- Misologist (शिक्षा द्वेषी)
- Misologist (विवाह द्वेषी)
- Misologist (शिक्षा द्वेषी)
- Ambiguous/Equivocal (अनेकार्थी)
- Hypochondria (काल्पनिक बीमारी)
- Oblation (बलि, आहुति, चढ़ावा)
- Assent (सहमति)
- Omnibus (सर्वसंग्रह)
- Communique (सरकारी घोषणा)
- Census (स)
- Graphologist (स)
- Assaulter / Assailant (आक्रमणकारी/हमलावार)
- Incurable (असुधारातीत)
- Wreath (पुष्पाहार/माला)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- One who cannot be corrected.
 - A garland of flowers.
 - Give tit for tat.
 - Departure of many people
 - Gift of money to a retiring people.
 - Give the right to vote.
 - Greedy for money.
 - General instructions.
 - Future generation.
 - Free from punishment.
 - Form opinion in advance.
 - For warning of an impending danger.
 - Fixed sum of money paid to somebody as income in his life time.
 - Fit for bad tempter of anger.
 - Fear of foreigners.
 - Fear of one self.
 - Fear of home surroundings.
 - Fear of dead body.
 - Fear of animals.
 - Fear of height
 - Faithful supporter.
 - Fail to pay a debt in time.
 - Expert in horse riding.
 - Existing since old times.
 - Existing for ever.
 - Amount of money paid to free a prisoner.
 - Refreshment or amusement after hard work.
 - Animals with four feet.
 - Any soft drink except water.
 - Art of growing vegetables, fruits, flowers.
 - Art of making fireworks.
 - Art of map making.
 - Style of speaking will.
 - Artificial centre for honey bees.
 - Assembly of worshippers.
 - Author's explanatory remarks at the beginning of a book.
 - Distinguishing marks of an office.
 - A bed of a new born baby.
 - Belief not based on reason or knowledge.
- Incorrigible (असुधारातीत)
 - Wreath (पुष्पाहार/माला)
 - Retaliate (प्रतिशोध लेना)
 - Exodus (बहिर्गमन)
 - Gratuity (उपदान)
 - Enfranchise (मताधिकार देना)
 - Repacious (लोभी)
 - Directive (निर्देश)
 - Posterity (भावी पीढ़ी)
 - Impunity (सजा से मुक्ति, उद्धार)
 - Pre-conceive (पूर्व धारणा बनाना)
 - Premonition (पूर्व सूचना)
 - Annuity (सालियाना)
 - Tantrum (आवेश, झल्लाहट)
 - Xenophobia (विदेशियों से भय)
 - Autophobia (अपने आप से भय)
 - Ecophobia (घर के चारों ओर की वस्तुओं से भय)
 - Necrophobia (शव से भय)
 - Zoophobia (जानवरों से भय)
 - Aerophobia (ऊँचाई से भय)
 - Henchman (सेवक, अनुचर)
 - Default (वादा खिलाफी करना)
 - Cavalier (घुड़सवार)
 - Antique (पुरातन/प्राचीन)
 - Eternal (शाश्वत/नित्य)
 - Ransom (फिरौती)
 - Recreation (मनोरंजन)
 - Quadruped (चौपाया)
 - Beverage (पेय/मादक पेय)
 - Horticulture (बागवानी)
 - Pyrotechnics (आतिशबाजी)
 - Cartography (मानचित्र बनाने की कला)
 - Elocution (वाकपटुता)
 - Hive (मधुमक्खी का छत्ता)
 - Congregation (धर्ममंडली)
 - Preface (प्रस्तावना)
 - Insignia [(अधिकार चिह्न/बैज (Badge))]
 - Cradle/Crib (खटोल, बच्चे का पालना)
 - Superstition (अंधविश्वास)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- Bird that comes and goes with seasons. - Migratory (प्रवासी)
- Blessing given by a priest. - Benediction (आशीर्वाद, मंगल कामना)
- Board of directors in a company or organization. - Directorate (निदेशक मंडल)
- A body of delegates. - Delegation (प्रतिनिधि मंडल)
- A book of a sacred / religious nature. - Scripture (धर्मग्रन्थ)
- Books, pictures etc intended to arouse sexual desire. - Erotica (अश्लील ग्रंथ/कामोत्तेजक साहित्य)
- Bring back to life. - Revive (होश में लाना)
- Bring under control by force. - Capture (कब्जा/अधीन करना)
- Bring under control in war. - Subjugate (अधीन/दमन करना)
- A building for the display of works of art. - Gallery (कला भवन)
- That can be expressed in words. - Expressible (कथनीय)
- Call back to the mind. - Recall (स्मरण करना)
- Capable for being reached. - Accessible (सुगम/सुलभ)
- Centre of attraction. - Cynosure (आकर्षण बिंदु)
- A building equipped with a powerful telescope for astronomical observations. - Observatory (वैधशाला)
- Brief account of a subject. - Summary/compendium (सारांश)
- Break an agreement, law or promise. - Violate (उल्लंघन करना)
- A building where military weapons are prepared or stored. - Arsenal (शास्त्रागार)
- That can live without outside help. - Viable (जीने में सक्षम)
- A caretaker of a public building. - Custodian (संरक्षक)
- Attachment to what is natural - Naturalism (प्रकृतिवाद)
- Approximate calculation of something. - Estimate (आकलन/अनुमान)
- Any kind of grain use for food. - Cereal (अनाज)
- Angry at injustice. - Indignant (रोष)
- Anxious to help somebody. - Solicitous (ध्यान रखने वाला)
- That can be perceived by the senses. - Preceptible (अनुभवगम्य)
- Ceremony of crowning a king. - Coronation (राज्याभिषेक)
- A chain of flowers, leaves, ribbons etc. - Festoon (तोरण/झालर)
- Change in direction. - Diversion (दिशा परिवर्तन)
- Change to something abnormal, unnatural. - Perversion (वित्ति/पथभ्रष्टता)
- Child of unusual or remarkable talent. - Prodigy (प्रतिभासंपन्न बालक)
- Chief actor or character in a story or drama. - Protagonist (नायक/मुख्य पात्र)
- Habitual character and disposition. - Ethos (आचार/लोकाचार)
- Using of new words. - Neologism (नये शब्दों का प्रयोग)
- One who holds that nothing is or can be known of the existence of God. - Agnostic (वह व्यक्ति जिसका सिद्धांत यह है कि ईश्वर के विषय में न जाना गया है, न जाना जा सकता है।)
- To destroy completely. - Annihilate (उन्मूलन करना)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- That which is open to more than one interpretation. - Ambiguous (अनिश्चित/संदिग्ध अस्पष्ट)
- Capable of living both on land and water. - Amphibious (स्थल तथा जल में रहने योग्य)
- In a state of mutual hostility. - Antagonistic (विरोधी/विपक्षी)
- Neutral party called upon to settle a dispute without reference to any other party. - Arbiter (पंच/निर्णय करने वाला/ मध्यस्थ)
- A government by one man. - Autocracy (वह राज्य जिसमें एक व्यक्ति (राजा) शासन करता हो)
- A narrative describing one subject under the guise of another or a sustained metaphor. - Allegory (दृष्टान्त/कथा)
- Kind of substance in the blood tending to neutralise others that are harmful - Antibody (रक्त में उपस्थित ऐसा पदार्थ जो हानिकारक तत्वों को नष्ट करता है।)
- The science of bee keeping cultivation and maintenance of bee- hives. - Apiculture (मधुमक्खियों का पालन)
- Recurrence of some disease after generation or similarity in special features with remote ancestors. - Atavism (विशेष रूपों में पुरुषों से समानता)
- To mitigate or lessen the suffering or pain. - Alleviate (छुटकारा देना/कम करना/सान्त्वना देना)
- A positive and emphatic advancement of change or statement against a person. - Allegation (मिथ्या अभियोग/झूठी प्रतिज्ञा)
- One who has regard for others as the basic principle of his actions. - Altruistic (परोपकारी)
- A person guilty of setting fire to the property. - Arsonist (सम्पत्ति या घर जलाने का अपराध करने वाला)
- Sensitiveness to the action of a particular food. - Allergy (किसी प्रकार के भोजन या दवा से प्रभावित हो जाना)
- By which human form and personality is attributed to God. - Anthropomorphism (ईश्वर को मनुष्य के आकार का मानने का सिद्धांत)
- A mistake in the chronological order or a thing which is out of harmony with a period - Anachronism (काल गणना का भ्रम)
- A machanic or craftsman who has acquired skill in a particular craft. - Artisan (शिल्पकार/कारीगर)
- A government by officials. - Bureaucracy (नौकरशाही)
- A man who is a great lover of books. - Bibliophile (पुस्तक का प्रेमी)
- The state of having two wives. - Bigamy (एक पत्नी या पति रहते दूसरा विवाह करने का अपराध)
- Belonging to a class between the gentry and the labourers. - Bourgeois (मध्यम वर्गीय)
- Socially unconventional, a man of free and easy habits. - Bohemian (व्यक्ति या व्यक्तियों का समूह विशेषकर कलाकार जो अपनी कला को नवीन ढंग से प्रस्तुत करते हैं।)
- One who readily believes everything and everyone. - Credulous (सहज विश्वासी)
- A citizen of the world. - Cosmopolitan (सारे विश्व का नागरिक)
- A man who is recovering from an illness. - Convalescent (पुनः स्वास्थ्य लाभोन्मुख)
- The state of being without a wife; abstaining from marital relationship. - Celibacy (ब्रह्मचर्य/अविवाहित जीवन)



- Centre of attraction or interest. - Cynosure (आकर्षण केन्द्र/ध्रुवतारा)
- A person who really understands the value of art, antiques etc. - Connoisseur (कला का निर्णायक/जो किसी कला में पारंगत हो)
- Hundred in Anniversary. - Centenary (सौवीं वर्षगांठ)
- Any language in speaking only. - Colloquialism (बोलचाल की शैली/चलती भाषा)
- To seize by authority. - Confiscate (जब्त करना)
- To give someone something to make good for loss or damage. - Compensate (क्षति पूर्ति करना)
- Reaching the final or the highest point. - Consummation (समापन/समाप्ति)
- A man who has lots of investments in the private sector. - Capitalist (पूँजीपति/महाजन)
- A ruler or boss who uses force in order to make people obey him. - Dictator (तानाशाह/अधिनायक)
- One who is engaged in the diplomatic service of a country. - Diplomat (कूटनीतिज्ञ/राजनयिक)
- Nature of double dealing. - Duplicity (कपट/छल/दुरंगी)
- A person who fails in the performance of his duty or commits an offence. - Delinquent (अपराधी/दोषी)
- Fruit or sweet-dish usually eaten after the main meals. - Dessert (भोजन के उपरान्त खाये जाने वाले फल, मेवा, मिठाई, आईसक्रीम आदि)
- A dabbler in the arts and literature. - Dilettante (कलानुरागी/नवसिखुआ)
- The state of being miserable bereft of all material possessions. - Destitution (अभावग्रस्तता/अभाव)
- Something regularly found among a particular people or community. - Endemic (स्थानीय मनुष्यों में प्रचलित)
- A person who likes to indulge in refined sensuous pleasure. - Epicure (इन्द्रियसुख में निरत/विषयासक्त)
- To remove all traces of. - Eradicate (नष्ट करना/जड़ सहित उखाड़ना)
- A professor who has retired from service. - Emeritus (सेवा से अवकाश प्राप्त परन्तु सम्मनित पद पर बनाये रखे हुए)
- An unusual bent of mind. - Eccentricity (व्यवहार की विचित्रता)
- One who is always seeking to escape from the harsh realities of life. - Escapist (न)
- To quicken the completion of work. - Expedite (जल्द करना/शीघ्रता करना)
- To free from the confines of something to liberate from. - Emancipate (मुक्त या उद्धार करना)
- A short but pithy and weighty saying, a short witty phrase. - Epigram (छोटी कविता/चुटकुला)
- Substitution of a mild for a very blunt expression. - Euphemism (मंगल भाषण)
- That which is all inclusive. - Exhaustive (थकाने वाला)
- Not refined and fluent but full of jerky movements. - Erratic (सनकी/नियमित/जिका भरोसा नहीं किया जा सके)
- That which tries to side-track the main issue by irrelevance. - Evasive (टालमटोल करने वाला)
- A state of mental weariness from of occupation. - Ennui (खिन्नता/ऊब)



- To make atonement for one's sins. - Expiate (पापों से निवृत्त करना/प्रायश्चित्त से पवित्र करना)
- Words or phrases inscribed on a person's tomb. - Epitaph (समाधि (कब्र) के ऊपर के पत्थर पर खुदा हुआ लेख)
- A person authorised to execute a legal deed. - Executor (मृतक के इच्छा पत्र का उत्तरसाधक)
- One who is subject to failure or to committing mistakes. - Fallible (भूल करने वाला)
- The animals of a particular region or epoch. - Fauna (प्रदेश विशेष के पशु वर्ग)
- A man who is genuinely interested in the welfare and emancipation of women. - Feminist (स्त्री उद्धारक या स्त्री का कल्याण करने वाला)
- A man with narrow and prejudiced religious views. - Fanatic (कट्टर/हठधर्मी)
- One who cannot be easily pleased. - Fastidious (जिसे प्रसन्न करना कठिन हो)
- Something artificial having the appearance of some thing got up. - Factitious (कृत्रिम/प्रचलित)
- Extremely showily and colourful personality: valuable and verbose speech. - Flamboyant (दिखावा करने वाला)
- Tendency to grow downwards. - Geotropism (अधोमुख बढ़ने की प्रवृत्ति)
- Act of killing one's clan, family or community. - Genocide (न)
- A connoisseur of wines and table delicacies. - Gourmet (स्वाद्विष्ट भोजन, अच्छी शराब आदि का पारखी)
- The act of killing a human being. - Homicide (नर हत्या)
- Traits, mental or physical, received from forefathers by birth. - Hereditary (आनुवंशिक/ पुरतैनी)
- One who lives in seclusion with thoughts of God. - Hermit (सा)
- Voluntary fees paid for professional services which carry no salary. - Honorarium (पारिश्रमिक/व्यवसाय का शुल्क)
- One who expresses ideas which are not in keeping with conventional religious teaching. - Heretic (नास्तिक/पाखंडी)
- One who is not orthodox. - Heterodox (नास्तिक/धर्म विरुद्ध)
- One who generously acts for the welfare and amelioration of mankind. - Humanitarian (मनुष्य जाति से प्रेम करने वाला)
- A gesture of respect and devotion. - Homage (श्रद्धांजलि/सम्मान प्रदर्शन)
- Rhetorical exaggeration in speaking or in a piece of writing. - Hyperbole (बड़ा चढ़ा कर कही गई बात/ अलंकार)
- A person who pretends to be what he is not, a pretender. - Hypocrite (छली/पाखंडी)
- That which cannot be broken through. - Impregnable (सहज में न जीतने योग्य/दुर्गम/दुर्जेय)
- That which can be easily understood. - Intelligible (बोधगम्य/स्पष्ट)
- That which is most likely to happen in future. - Imminent (शीघ्र होने वाली घटना)
- One who cannot be soothed or calmed or near pacified. - Implacable (जिसे संतुष्ट न किया जा सके/ कठोर)
- that which cannot be put into practice. - Impracticable (असाध्य/दुष्कर)
- One who cannot be corrected or reformed.



- Incorrigible (जिसको सुधारा नहीं जा सकता/बिगड़ा हुआ)
- To accuse or charge a person with a crime in due form of law.
 - Indict (अपराध या दोष लगाना)
- That which cannot be easily imitated or copied.
 - Inimitable (जिसकी नकल न की जा सके/अद्वितीय)
- That which cannot be defeated.
 - Invincible (न जीने जाने योग्य/अजेय)
- A personal peculiarity of temperament or constitution.
 - Idiosyncrasy (मानसिक प्रवृत्ति की विशेषावस्था)
- A man who is easily irritated and loses temper.
 - Irritable (शीघ्र क्रुद्ध होने वाला)
- A disease in which a man suffers from sleeplessness.
 - Insomnia (नींद न आने का रोग)
- A country or a people or community which is in open revolt or rebellion.
 - Insurgent (बागी/विद्रोही, क्रांतिकारी या बगावत करने वाला)
- A man who has a most uncompromising attitude especially in politics.
 - Intransigent (जिद्दी/हठी/दुराग्रही)
- Ascribing or attributing to something or someone.
 - Imputation (दोषारोपण)
- A decision which cannot be changed or modified.
 - Irrevocable (अटल/अखंडनीय)
- Produced or manufactured within the country without foreign aid or collaboration.
 - Indigenous (स्वदेशीय)
- A deceptive appearance, statement or belief.
 - Illusion (भ्रम/मोह/धोखा)
- Use of language or gesture which implies threat to someone.- Intimidation (धमकी/डॉट डपट)
- The act of provoking and goading a man.- Instigation (प्रोत्साहन/कुकर्म कराने के लिए उकसाना)
- Something which provides interest and attraction.
 - Incentive (उत्पादन वृद्धि हेतु कर्मचारियों को अतिरिक्त भत्ता)
- A subtle allusive and generally deprecatory remark.
 - Innuendo (व्यंग/वक्रोक्ति)
- Something that is too delightful or beautiful for words.
 - Ineffable (अवर्णनीय/अकथनीय)
- A man who has no money
 - Impecunious (निर्धन/धनहीन)
- Ill timed circumstances.
 - Irony (व्यंग्य/ताना)
- A person who is well versed in law.
 - Jurist (विधिवेत्ता/न्यायशास्त्र का विशेषज्ञ)
- An excessively morbid desire to steal.
 - Kleptomania (बिना जरूरत के चोरी करने की आदत)
- Technical knowledge of a particular work.
 - know-ho (विशेष कार्य का तकनीकी ज्ञान)
- Extremely extravagant in manners and morals.
 - Licentious (अनैतिक/दुराचारी)
- A hater of mankind.
 - Misanthrope (मनुष्य द्रोही/मनुष्य से घृणा करने वाला)
- A hater of women.
 - Misogynist (स्त्री जाति से द्वेष करने वाला)
- A person who believes in being married to one person at a time. Or, A man who has only one wife.
 - Monogamist (एक पत्नी वाला मनुष्य)
- Belonging to this world, earthly.
 - Mundane (लौकिक/सांसारिक)
- Application of name or descriptive term to an object to which it is not literally applicable.
 - Metaphor (रूपक/लक्षण)
- A scene or situation which is gruesomely imaginative or full of gruesome details.
 - Macabre (भयानक/खौफनाक/उग्र)



- One who plays the role of bringin two antagonistic parties together.
- Mediator (मध्यस्थ/पंच/समझौता करानेवाला)
- A change that befalls something. - Mutation (परिवर्तन)
- A drama which is marked by very crude appeal to feelings and emotions
- Melodrama (राग-द्वेष, काम-क्रोध आदि भावनाओं को खूब उत्तेजित करने वाला सुखान्त नाटक)
- One who believes in the philosophy that nothing has real existence. - Nihilist (शून्यवादी)
- A quick remedy or apartent medicine or similarly a pet scheme. - Nostrum (गुप्त औषधी)
- Science and study that treats of coins as medals. - Numismatics (मुद्राशास्त्र)
- Extremely loud and showy as opposed to reserved and modest.
- Ostentatious (प्रदर्शन करने का शौकीन/दिखावटी)
- To banish or turn out of society and fellowship- Ostracise (जाति से बाहर करना/बहिष्कृत करना)
- The art of spelling words correctly. - Orthography (व्याकरण का वर्ण विचार भाग)
- An unscrupulous person, who puts experience before principle. - Opportunist (अवसरवादी)
- The act of fixing of a proper position for something.
- Orientation (स्वस्थिति निर्धारण/परिस्थितियों के अनुसार ढालने की योग्यता)
- The science of languages. - Philology (भाषा विज्ञान)
- Science dealing with stamp-collection. - Philately (डाक टिकट एकत्र करने का कार्य)
- Science of vocal natural sounds. - Phonology (ध्वनि विज्ञान)
- To make evasive or misleading statements. - Prevaricate (वाक् छल करना/धुमाकर बोलना)
- Statement showing remarkable degree of prediction. - Prophecy (भविष्यवाणी)
- Study of ancient writings and inscriptions. - Palaeography (प्राचीन शिलालेखों का अध्ययन)
- A passage marking the close of a speech. - Peroration (व्याख्यान का उपसंहार/लंबा भाषण)
- A man who practises psychiatry. - Psychiatrist (मनोचिकित्सक)
- A school teacher or a man affecting learning. - Pedagogue (अध्यापक)
- Some previous example from the past. - Precedent (पूर्व दृष्टान्त/उदाहरण)
- A child born after the death of his father.
- Posthumous (पिता के मरने के बाद जन्म लेने वाला बच्चा)
- One who makes love now to one and now to another. - Philanderer (इश्कबाज/आशिक/प्रेमी)
- Original model. - Prototype (मूलप्रति/एक नमूना/आदर्श/प्रतीक)
- Application of pasteurism in order to sterilize milk et. by exposure to high temperature.
- Pasteurisation (कृमियों के नाश करने की विधि)
- Former holder of an office or a position. - Predecessor (पूर्व अधिकारी)
- To mediate; to pander over a question. - Ruminare (किसी विषय/प्रश्न पर अधिक-विचार करना)
- A state in which supremacy of people or its eloected representatiges is achnowledge.
- Republic (प्रजातंत्र राज्य)
- To give up entirely. - Renounce (त्योगना/छोड़ना/अस्वीकार करना)
- To restore to good condition. - Rehabilitation (पुनर्वासन)
- A person who refuses compliance with. - Recalcitrant (अडिगल)
- That which reminds one of something. - Reminiscent (स्मरण कराने वाला)



- A reasoner willing to avail himself of fallacies that will help his case.
- Sophist (झूठी दलील से धोखा देने वाला)
- A very delicate flow or mistake which is not expected from the person making it.
- Solecism (बोलने या लिखने में अशुद्ध प्रयोग)
- A symbolic religious ceremony especially baptism. - Sacrament (ईसाइयों का नामकरण संस्कार)
- Someone on whom the blame for other's sins can be fixed.
- Scapegoat (दूसरे के लिए कष्ट उठाने वाला/बलिदान का बकरा)
- Abounding in blood
- Sanguine (उत्साहयुक्त/आशावादी)
- Over bearing.
- Supercilious (गुस्सेवाला/अभिमानी)
- Extremely refined in dress, conduct and speech-Fashionable and modernized.
- Sophisticated (परिष्कृत व्यक्तियों को अच्छा लगने वाला)
- A person who flatters others for personal motives.
- Sycophant (चापलूस/जी हजूरी करने वाला/खुशामदी)
- Affectedly and pompously formal person or style.
- Sententious (प्रभावशाली और ठाट-बाट वाला/आडम्बरी; सूत्रमय)
- One who takes pleasure in cruel, in human and un natural acts of tyranny.
- Sadist (पीड़ा पहुँचाकर रतीभर सुख प्राप्त करने वाला व्यक्ति)
- That which surpasses.
- Transcendental (अस्पष्ट/गुप्त/श्रेष्ठ)
- Communication between mind and other than the known channel of senses.
- Telepathy (मानसिक संक्रमण/दूर स्थित एक मन का दूसरे पर प्रभाव)
- The practice of taking exorbitant or excessive interest on the money lent.
- Usury (सूद खोरी/अधिक ब्याज खाने वाला)
- Guilty of accepting bribes extremely mercenary.
- Venal (धन लाभी)
- Extreme enthusiasm for a cause.
- Zeal (उत्साह/जोश)
- A person who is indifferent to pleasure or pain.
- Stoic (बैरागी/सुख:दुख को समान समझने वाला)
- A person sent on a mission.
- Emissary (भेद लेने वाला दूत/गुप्तचर/भेदिया)
- A person who spends his money recklessly.
- Spendthrift (मुक्त हस्त धन उड़ाने वाला)
- Incapable of being penetrated.
- Impenetrable (अभेद्य/अथाह)
- Incapable of being wounded or hurt.
- Invulnerable (जिसमें घाव या चोट न लग सके)
- Incapable of being repaired.
- Irreparable (द)
- Incapable of being avoided.
- Unavoidable/inevitable (अनिवार्य/आवश्यक)
- Incapable of being explained or accounted for.- Inexplicable (जिसका वर्णन न किया जा सके।)
- Incapable of being expressed in words.
- Inexpressible (अकथनीय)
- Not definitely or clearly expressed.
- Inexplicit (अस्पष्ट/अनिर्धारित)
- Incapable of being justified or excused.
- Inexcusable (जिसे माफ न किया जा सके/अक्षम्य)
- Incapable of being solved.
- Insoluble (जो घुल न सके/अघुलनशील)
- Incapable of being defended.
- Indefensible (जिसका प्रतिरक्षण न किया जा सके)
- Incapable of being defended.
- Indefensible (जिसका प्रतिरक्षण न किया जा सके)



- Incapable of being taken by force of arms. - Impregnable (अजेय/अभेद्य)
- Incapable of being admitted or allowed. - Inadmissible (जिसे स्वीकार न किया जा सके)
- Incapable of being reached. - Inaccessible (पहुँच से परे/अगम्य)
- Incapable of being tired out. - Inexhaustible (कभी न थकने वाला/खत्म न होने वाला/अक्षम्य)
- Incapable of being perceived by the senses. - Imperceptible (अगम्य/अव्यक्तए जो समझ से परे हो)
- Incapable of being destroyed. - Indestructible (अविनाशी/जिसे नष्ट न किया जा सके)
- Incapable of being divided. - Indivisible (जिसे विभाजित न किया जा सके)
- Liable to be easily broken. - Brittle (भंगुर/सख्त, परन्तु सरलता से टूट जाने वाला)
- An assembly of worshippers. - Congregation (भक्तजनों का समुदाय)
- Occurring at the same time - Simultaneous (समकालीन/एक ही समय होने वाला)
- Allowing the passage of rays of light. - Transparent (पारदर्शी/स्पष्ट)
- Not allowing the passage of light. - Opaque (अपारदर्शक)
- Of unknown or unadmitted authorship. - Anonymous (गुमनाम/बिना नाम का)
- Compulsory enlistment for military and other services. - Conscription (देश की सेवा हेतु फौज में अनिवार्य भर्ती)
- A figure with many angles or sides. - Polygon (बहुभुज/तीन या तीन से अधिक भुजा वाला)
- Belonging to all parts of the world. - Universal (व्यापक/सर्वव्यापी)
- The science of reasoning. - Logic (तर्कशास्त्र)
- The cessation of warfare before a treaty is signed. - Armistice (युद्ध विराम/विराम संधि)
- Signature of someone's name without his permission. - Forgery (जालसाजी)
- Property inherited from one's father or ancestors. - Patrimony (पैतृक सम्पत्ति)
- Incapable of being out into practice. - Impracticable (अव्यवहारिक)
- Incapable of being overcome. - Insurmountable (अपराजेय/अजेय/दुर्गम)
- Having no beginning or end to its existence. - Eternal (स्थायी/अनादि/अनन्त)
- His motive was merely to get money. - Mercenary (केवल धन के लिए कार्य करने वाला/लालची)
- Forbidden, prohibited by law. - Illicit (अवैध/गैरकानूनी)
- Fond of entertaining guests. - Hospitable (सत्कार करने वाला)
- A general pardon of political offenders. - Amnesty (राजनैतिक अपराधियों को सामूहिक क्षमा दान)
- A Objects possessed of life. - Animate (जीवित/जानदार)
- Persons who work in the same department of an office. - Colleagues (सहकर्मी/साथ-साथ काम करने वाला)
- A place where people lunch on payment. - Restaurant (भोजनालय/जलपान गृह)
- A place with a good climate for invalids. - Sanitorium (स्वास्थ्य निवास)
- Government in which no distinction is made between persons of different religions. - Secular (धर्म निरपेक्ष)
- One who is qualified to navigate an aircraft. - Navigator (जहाज या हवाई जहाज चलाने वाला)
- To increase the gravity of an offence or the intensity of a dispute.



- To increase the speed of - Aggravate (उग्र होना/रुष्ट होना)
- Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation. - Accelerate (चाल बढ़ाना)
- - Alimony (तलाक हो जाने पर पत्नी को दिया जाने वाला खर्च या भत्ता)
- The act of talking impiously about sacred things. - Blasphemy (ईश्वर तथा धर्म की निन्दा)
- A man or woman with skin and hair of auburn colour. - Blonde (गोरे रंग एवं सुनहरे बालों वाली स्त्री या बालिका)
- Willful and persistent resistance to lawful authority. - Contumacy (अकम्बड़पन/उदण्डता/अपमान)
- Belonging or pertaining to an individual from birth. - Congenital (एक जैसे स्वभाव वाले/अनुकूल/अपमान)
- To restrain by force or impel a person by force. - Coerce (धमकाना/जोर-जुल्म करना/जबरन काम करवाना)
- Eater of flesh. - Carnivore (मांस-भक्षी)
- Income just sufficient to live on. - Subsistence (जीवित रहने के साधन)
- A person who is insensible to kind thoughts or sympathetic feelings. - Callous (निर्दयी/निर्मोही)
- One who prescribes medicine. - Physician (चिकित्सक/दवा द्वारा इलाज करने वाला)
- Total loss of voice. - Aphonia (वागरोध/आवाज की रुकावट)
- To do away with a rule. - Abrogate (किसी नियम को आज्ञानुसार हटाना/रद्द करना)
- To make thin or fine or to reduce the strength. - Attenuate (दुर्बल करना/शक्ति कम करना)
- Deviation from the common rule or standard. - Anomaly (अनियमितता/अव्यवस्था)
- A person who starves the body for the good of the soul. - Ascetic (सन्यासी/योगी)
- Animals equally at home on land or at sea. - Amphibian (उभयचर जन्तु)
- Stealthily done. - Surreptitious (छल, कष्ट या चोरी से किया हुआ)
- One not concerned with right or wrong. - Amoral (अधर्मी)
- A person who opposes war or use of military. - Pacifist (शान्तिवादी)
- Severely abusive writing in journals. - Scurrilous (अशिष्ट लेख)
- Call upon God or any other power (like law) etc for help or protection. - Invocation (प्रार्थना/स्तुति)
- Fear of being enclosed in a small closed space. - Claustrophobia (एक मानसिक बीमारी जिसमें बंद कमरे में डर लगता है।)
- Fear of crowds. - Agoraphobia (एक मानसिक बीमारी जिसमें भीड़ से डर लगता है।)
- Fear of strangers. - Xenophobia (एक मानसिक बीमारी जिसमें अनजाने व्यक्ति से डर लगता है।)
- Mental derangement. - Paranoia (मानसिक उन्माद/पागलपन)
- Succession of rulers belonging to one family. - Dynasty (वंशज/वंश उत्तराधिकार)
- To cut something into two pieces. - Sever (काटना/छोटे-छोटे भागों में विभाजित करना)
- Flat metal or porcelain plate fixed on a wall as an ornament or memorial. - Plaque (शील्ड)
- Act of deceiving somebody in order to make money. - Fraud (धोखे बाजी)
- A short poem or speech addressed to the spectators after the conclusion of a drama. - Epilogue (किसी चरित्र या वक्ता का अंतिम संदेश, उपसंहार)



- Capable of being understood in either of two or more possible senses and therefore not definite. - Ambiguous (अनेक अर्थों वाली/अनिश्चित अर्थवाली)
- Something capable of being done. - Feasible (व्यवहार में या प्रयोग में आने योग्य)
- One who walks on ropes. - Acrobat (नट)
- The study of the origin and history of words. - Etymology (शब्दों का इतिहास)
- The study of maps. - Cartography (मानचित्र बनाने की कला (का अध्ययन))
- Tough tissues in joints. - Ligaments (हड्डियों को एक दूसरे से बाँधने वाली तन्तुओं की पट्टी)
- Building in which dead bodies are kept for a time. - Mortuary (मुर्दाघर/शवगृह)
- or, A place for keeping dead bodies before burial or cremation. - Mortuary (मुर्दाघर/शवगृह)
- Clinic for the treatment for consumptives in hilly areas where the climate is salubrious. - Sanatorium (क्षय रोगियों का आरोग्य आश्रम)
- One who believes that gaining pleasure is the most important thing in life. - Hedonist (वह व्यक्ति जो सुख या आनंद (pleasure) के लिए जीता है।)
- A person who has no understanding for arts/uncivilized person. - Philistine (वैसा व्यक्ति जिसमें कला, संस्कृति को समझने की अभिरुचि न हो/गँवार)
- One who breaks the established traditions and image. - Fatalist (भाग्य पर भरोसा रखने वाला व्यक्ति)
- A person having deep study in a language. - Philologist (भाषा विज्ञानी/शब्द शास्त्रज्ञ)
- One who resists to the end. - Diehard (अंत तक विरोध करने वाला)
- Diehard, believer and supporter of some religion, cause or political ideology. - Fanatic (कट्टर, हठधर्मी, धर्मान्ध)
- Wild and noisy disorder. - Pandemonium (कोलाहल/हुल्लड़)
- Property handed down after the death of a person. - Legacy (वसीयत की हुई वस्तु या धन)
- or Property that which to given to a person by one's will. - Legacy (किसी भूतपूर्व मालिक की जिन्दगी में ही दूसरे के नाम स्थानान्तरित धन)
- Placing a thing beside another. - Juxtapose (आस-पास रखना)
- Expert in the scientific study of skin diseases. - Dermatologist (चर्म रोग विशेषज्ञ)
- Of very bad morals; characterized by debasement or degeneration. - Depraved (भ्रष्ट/नैतिक पतन)
- Body of human being or animal enabled for burial. - Mummy (रसायनों के द्वारा सम्भाल कर रखा गया शव)
- The abandonment of one's country or cause. - Desertion (त्याग/संबंध विच्छेद)
- Treatment by means of exercise and massage. - Physiotherapy (प्राकृतिक चिकित्सा प्रणाली)
- Bitter and violent attack in words. - Diatribe (कड़ी आलोचना/भर्त्सना उग्र भाषण, कटु निन्दा)
- To be biased against. - Prejudiced (पक्षपात/प्रतिकूल/हानिकारक)
- To examine one's own thoughts and feelings. - Introspection (अन्तर्दर्शन/अपने दिल से मनन करने का तरीका)
- A small enclosure of cattle, sheep, poultry etc.- Fold (भेड़ों, पशुओं तथा घरेलू मुर्गियों का बाड़ा)
- Large scale departure of people. - Exodus (निर्गमन/प्रस्थान)



- A sudden rush of wind. - Storm (तूफान)
- A man of odd habits. - Eccentric (विचित्र/असाधारण)
- Lack of enough blood in the body. - Anaemia (रक्तहीनता/शरीर का पीलापन)
- Mania for stealing articles. - Stealthiness/plagiarism (वस्तुओं की चोरी/ग्रन्थ चोरी)
- A child of unusual or remarkable talent. - Precocious (छोटी आयु में प्रतिभा सम्पन्न होने वाला (बच्चा)
- Belief that God is in everything and that everything is God. - Pantheism (विश्व देवतावाद)
- The state of being miserable, bereft of all possessions. - Destitute (अभावग्रस्त/निस्सहाय)
- That which cannot be called back. - Irredeemable (जिसे पूरा न किया जा सके/भ्रष्ट)
- One who journeys from place to place. - Itinerant (घुमक्कड़/घूमने फिरने वाला)
- Commencement of adjacent words with the same letter - Alliteration (अनुप्रास)
- A specialist who tests eyesight. - Ophthalmologist (आँख का उचार करने वाला चिकित्सक)
- A wall built to prevent the sea or a river from flooding an area. - Embankment (बाँध/तटबंध)
- Something that is poisonous or unhealthy. - Trivial (साधारण/कम महत्व का)
- A mental illness or condition in which somebody has an exaggerated belief in their own importance or power. - Megalomania (मानसिक बीमारी)
- A person who is inactive. - Torepid (शिथिल/सुस्त)
- Relating to tragedy - Tragic (दुःख से भरा)
- Loss of memory. - Amnesia (जिसकी स्मृति लोप हो गई हो/स्मृतिहीनता)
- A small umbrella - Parasol (एक प्रकार का छोटा छाता जो स्त्रियाँ प्रयोग में लाती हैं।)
- An insatiable, often periodic, craving for alcoholic drink. - Dipsomania (ऐसा व्यक्ति जो शराब पीने की अत्यधिक इच्छा रखता हो तथा जो इसे अपने वश में नहीं कर सकता हो।)
- A mental illness that causes a strong desire to set fire to things. - pyromania (ऐसी मनःस्थिति से ग्रसित व्यक्ति जो चीजों को जलाने की इच्छा रखता हो)
- An infectious disease in back of the throat. - Diphtheria (कंठ का संक्रामक रोग)
- The practice of worshipping statues as gods. - Idolatory (मूर्तिपूजा/भक्ति)
- Criticising popular beliefs or established customs and ideas. - Iconoclastic (लोकप्रिय विश्वास, रीति रिवाज और विचार विरोधी मूर्ति तोड़ने वाला)
- A place where government/public records are kept - Archive (ग्रन्थरक्षगृह)
- Living together of a man and woman without being married to each other. - Concubinage (अवैध पत्नीवाद)
- Too much official formality. - Red-Tapism (सरकारी दफ्तरों के कानूनों, कायदों की कड़ी पाबंदी)
- That which lasts for a short time. - Transitory (क्षणिक/क्षण भंगुर)
- Constant efforts to achieve something. - Perseverance (निरन्तर उद्यम/परिश्रम)
- An occasion of great importance. - Momentous (महत्व का)
- To have a very high opinion of oneself. - Conceited (घमण्डी/अभिमानी)
- One who is given to pleasures of the flesh. - Epicurean (खाने-पीने का शौकीन/मांस प्रेमी)
- A person who enjoys food and drink of high quality and knows a lot about it.



- The sound of a funeral bell. - Epicure (खाने-पीने का शौकीन)
- Belief that war and violence are unjustified. - Knell (मृत्यु के समय बजायी जाने वाल घंटी)
- A group of girls. - Pacifism (शांतिवादिता)
- Military waking signal sounded in the morning. - Bevy (लड़कियों का समूह)
- Reveille (सुबह में सैनिकों को जगाने वाला गीत)
- Or A tune that is played to wake solidiers in the morning.
- Reveille (सुबह में सैनिकों को जगाने वाला गीता)
- The highest singing voice in women or boys. or A music in highest voice
- Soprano (औरतों और लड़कों का गाने का सबसे ऊँचा गला या स्वर, सबसे ऊँचे सर का गीत)
- A song to put babies to sleep. - Lullaby (बच्चों को सुलाने का गीत)
- A hymn or song, sacred song sung in praise og God. - Anthem (ईश्वर स्तुति/भजन)
- A sea abounding in islands Or A group of islands. - Archipelago (टापुओं का समुदाय)
- A short walk for pleasure or exercise. - Stroll (परिभ्रमण/पैदल घूमना)
- To move along with quick, short twistings. - Wriggle (शरीर ऐंठना)
- One who possesses many talents. - Versatile (चपल/चंचल/अस्थिर/बदलने योग्य)
- A dramatic performance Or An entertainment in dumb show- Masque (कठपुतली का तमाशा)
- One who can use either of his hands with ease.
- Ambidextrous (दायें और बायें, दोनों हाथों से समान रूप से काम कर सकना)
- A person who is skilled in horsemanship. - Equestrian (घोड़े पर सवार व्यक्ति)
- Extreme of old age when a man behaves like a fool. - Dotage (वृद्धावस्था के कारण कमजोरी)
- That can be felt or touched. - Palpable (स्पर्शनीय)
- One who has suddenly gained new wealth, power or prestige.
- Parvenu (व्यक्ति जो अमीर तो बन गया हो लेकिन आदतें न बदली हो।)
- A short journey make by a group of persons together. - Excursion (सैर/मनोरंजन हेतु भ्रमण)
- That which makes it difficult to recognize the presence of real nature of somebody or something.
- Camouflage (छद्मावरण/वह वस्तु जिके कारण किसी अन्य वस्तु की वास्तविकता का पता लगाना मुश्किल हो जाता है)
- One who thinks that human nature is essentially evil. - Cynic (मानवद्वेषी)
- Astyle in which a writer makes a display of his knowledge.
- Pedantic (विद्या का व्यर्थ आडम्बर दिखाने वाला)
- A person pretending to be somebody he is not. - Impostor (ठगी/पाखंडी/छली मनुष्य)
- One who specialises in the study of birds. - Ornithologist (पक्षी-विद्या जानने वाला)
- To mediate between two parties in a dispute. - Intercede (मध्यस्थ होना)
- Something which is not thorough or profound. - Superficial (अगाढ़/बाहरी)
- A house for storing grains. - Granary (धान्यागार)
- A light sailing boat built especially for racing. - Yacht (सैर करने की नाव)
- The original inhabitants of a country. - Aborigines (किसी देश के आदि निवासी)



- A short stay at a place. - Sojourn (थोड़े समय के लिए कहीं पर ठहरना)
- Opposed to great or sudden change - Conservative (नियम के बदलने का विरोध करने वाला)
- Relationship by blood or birth. - Consanguinity (सगोत्रता)
- A person living permanently in a certain place - Domicile (घर/सर्वदा रहने का स्थान)
- Anything written in a letter after it is signed. - Postscript (लेख जो चिट्ठी समाप्त करने पर लिखा जाये)
- To cause troops etc to spread out in readiness for battle. - Deploy (पंक्ति में रखना/फैलाना)
- A person who is too concerned with small details or rules Or one who makes a vain display of his learning, a conceited fellow. - Pedant (विद्या का व्यर्थ आडम्बर दिखाने वाला/अभिमानी मनुष्य)
- Winding sheet of a corpse. - Shroud (कफन)
- According to custom. - Customary (प्रधानुसार)
- Abnormally high blood pressure. - Hypertension (अतिरक्तदाब)
- Art of beautiful handwriting. - Calligraphy (सुलेख)
- All the customs and beliefs of a society. Tradition. (परंपरा/चलन)
- Art or craft needing skill with hand. - Handicraft (हस्तशिल्प/दस्तकारी)
- Art of growing vegetables, fruit, flowers. - Horticulture (बागवानी)
- Art of map making. - Cartography (मानचित्र कला)
- Art and science of building construction. - Architecture (भवन निर्माण कला)
- Style of speaking well. - Elocution (वाकपटुता)
- An author's explanatory remarks at the beginning of a book. - Preface (प्रस्तावना)
- Bearing young by eggs. - Oviparous (अंडज)
- Bearing living youngs. - Viviparous (सजीव प्रजक/सजीव बच्चा देने वाली)
- Belief not based on reason or knowledge. - superstition (अंधविश्वास)
- Belonging to long past. - Ancient (प्राचीन)
- A board of directors in a company. - Directorate (निदेशक मंडल)
- A body of voters. - Electorate (निर्वाचक मंडल)
- A brief account of a subject. - Summary/Compendium (सारांश)
- Capable of being wounded. - Vulnerable (आघात योग्य)
- Care taken in advance to avoid a risk - Precaution (सतर्कता)
- A chief character in a story or drama - protagonist (मुख्यपात्र/नायक)
- A collection of poems or prose. - Anthology (काव्य संग्रह)
- In sufficient feeding or nourishing. - Malnutrition (कुपोषण)
- Favourable to health - Wholesome (स्वास्थ्यप्रद)
- A conference for discussion on a subject. - Symposium (विचार गोष्ठी)
- A list of household goods, furniture etc. - Inventory (सूचीपत्र)
- Scarcity of food. - Famine (अकाल)
- Fear of being in open space. - Agoraphobia (खुली जगह से भय)
- Fear of books. - Bibliophobia (पुस्तकों से भय)
- Fear of snakes. - Ophiophobia (साँपों से भय)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- Fear of water - Hydrophobia (जल से भय)
- Fear of a dead body - Nacrophobia (लाश से भय)
- Fear of animals. - Zoophobia (जानवरों से भय)
- Fear of height - Aero phobia (ऊँचाई से भय)
- Fear of home surroundings - Ecophobia (घर के चारों ओर की चीजों से भय)
- Fear of oneself - Autophoby (अपने आप से भय)
- Fear of foreigners - Xenophobia (विदेशियों से भय)
- Fond of much alcoholic drink. - Bibulous (शराबी)
- A person who is foolishly fond of one's wife. - Henpecked/Uxorious (पत्नी परायण/जोरू का गुलाम)
- To free a prisoner on payment. - Ransom (फिरौती लेकर आजाद करना)
- A funeral rite. - Funeral/obseques (अंत्येष्टि)
- A girl/woman who flirts. - Coquette (नखरेबाज लड़की या स्त्री)
- To support a statement or theory. - Corroborate (संपुष्टि करना)
- A group of talkative girls or women - Gaggle (स्त्रियों का समूह)
- A hater of new things. - Misoneist (नयी चीजों से घृणा करने वाला व्यक्ति)
- A hater of smoking. - Misocapnic (धूम्रपान विरोधी)
- A bad smell or taste. - Foul (बदबुदार)
- A person who helps in a wrong deed or crime. - Accomplice/Accessory (सहअपराधी)
- Helpful but not an essential part. - Accessory (सहायक)
- A holy or sacred place. - Sanctuary (पवित्र स्थान/देवालय)
- Honesty and uprightness of character. - Integrity (ईमानदारी/सत्यनिष्ठा)
- That which cannot be altered - Unalterable/Irrevocable (अपरिवर्तनीय)
- Killing of large numbers of defenceless people. - Massacre (हत्याकांड/भीषण नरसंहार)
- The murder for political reasons. - Assassination (राजनैतिक कारणों से की जाने वाली हत्या)
- The murder of one's sister - Sorocide (बहन हत्या)
- The murder of one's husband. - Mariticide (पति हत्या)
- The murder of one's mother - Matricide (मातृ हत्या)
- The murder of one's wife - Uxoricide (पत्नी हत्या)
- A large retail store. - Emporium (बिक्री केन्द्र)
- A large destruction by fire. - Holocaust (विध्वंस/अग्निकांड)
- A law making body of a country/state - Legislature (विधायिका)
- A legal enquiry to find out faults. - Glossary (शब्द संग्रह)
- A lover of animals - Philozoic (पशु प्रेमी)
- A lover of arts. - Philotgechnic (कला प्रेमी)
- A lover of dogs. - Canaphilist (कुत्तों का शौकीन)
- Philotheist - Philotheist (ईश्वर प्रेमी)
- A lover of learning - Philomath (विद्या प्रेमी)
- A lover of women. - Philogynist (स्त्रीप्रेमी)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- A lover of poetry and art. - Philomuse (कला प्रेमी/काव्य प्रेमी)
- A marriage of God. - Theogamy (ईश्वर विवाह)
- A medicine that induces sleep - Narcotice (नींद लाने वाली दवा)
- A name derived from father's name. - Patronymic (पैतृक नाम)
- That which is not composed of matter. - Incorporeal (आध्यात्मिक)
- A notice of the death of a person - Obituary (मृत्यु सूचना)
- One who cannot die. - Immortal (अमर)
- One who always gets into trouble. - Scapegrace (मूर्ख/अशिष्ट व्यक्ति)
- One who fluently speaks many languages. - Polygot (भाषा विद्)
- One who goes for a secret official mission. - Emissary (जासूस)
- One who habitually talks while sleeping. - Somniloquist (नींद में बड़बड़ाने वाला व्यक्ति)
- One who walks while asleep. - Somnambulist (नींद में टहलने वाला व्यक्ति)
- One who is excessively patriotic. - Chauvinist (अंधदेश भक्त)
- One who analyses handwriting - Graphologist (हस्तलेखाविशेषज्ञ)
- One who makes a secret plan against somebody. - Conspirator (षड्यंत्रकारी)
- One who receives something. - Recipient (प्राप्तकर्ता)
- One who regains health and strength after illness. - Convalescent (स्वास्थ्य लाभकर्ता)
- One who plans to destroy all governments. - Anarchist (अराजकतावादी व्यक्ति/आतंकवादी)
- One who studies the mind. - Psychologist (मनोवैज्ञानिक)
- One who speaks two languages. - Bilingual (द्विभाषी)
- One who takes an active part in politics. - Activist (सक्रिय व्यक्ति)
- One who witnesses secretly to private conversation. - Eavesdropper (चुपके से निजी वार्तालाप सुनने वाला व्यक्ति)
- A person who belongs to a region from earliest time. - Aboriginal (आदिवासी)
- A permanent military station. - Contonment (छावनी)
- A perfect happiness. - Ecstasy/Bliss (परमानंद)
- A person who holds a high office. - Dignitary (उच्च पदाधिकारी)
- A person who is kept as a prisoner. - Captive (कैदी/बंदी)
- A person who takes part in state affairs. - Statesman (राजनेता)
- A person who files a suit. - Plaintiff (मुद्दई)
- A person who uses disruptive forces to bring about political or social change. - Extremist (उग्रवादी)
- A policy of extending a country's empire and influence. - Imperialism (साम्राज्यवाद)
- Persuade by flattery. - Cajole (खुशामद करना)
- A political system without opposition. - Totalitarianism (एकदलीय शासनतंत्र)
- A person who is reserved in speech. - reticent (अल्पभाषी)
- Science of poisons. - Toxicology (विषविज्ञान)
- Science of time - Horology (समय का विज्ञान)
- Science of the races of mankind and their relation to one another



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- Science of the fossils.
 - A temple dedicated to all the gods.
 - That which is pig like
 - That which can easily be curved without breaking.
 - That which eats grass
 - That which has very harmful and dangerous effects.
 - That which is corpse like.
 - That which is cat like.
 - That which is cow like
 - That which is fish like.
 - That which is morally dangerous.
 - That which is prohibited by law.
 - A whole body of wage earners.
 - The word whose meaning is difficult to understand.
 - Writing material pen, paper etc.
 - A Post without remuneration.
 - A woman whose husband is dead.
 - A man whose wife is dead.
 - An outline of a play, opera.
 - A woman who entertains guests.
 - A vehicle which is used to carry a sick or wounded person.
 - A vehicle which is used to carry a dead body
 - A person who is very cruel.
 - A written statement which gives us information.
 - A person who visits other countries for pleasure.
 - A thing which can easily be broken.
 - Looking upon dark side of things.
 - A person who looks at the dark side of things.
 - Looking upon bright side of things.
 - A person who looks at the bright side of things.
 - An idle talk.
 - That which cannot be understood.
 - A substance which is used to kill an insect.
 - A substance which is used to kill a germ.
 - A substance which prevents wound from germs.
 - A swelling part of a body
 - A person who is a specialist in pregnancy and childbirth.
 - A speech/statement which is delivered without preparation.
- Ethnology (मानवजीति विज्ञान)
 - Palaeontology (जीवाश्म विज्ञान)
 - Pantheon (सर्वेश्वर मंदिर)
 - Porcine (सुअर जैसा)
 - Flexible (लचीला)
 - Herbivore/Herbivorous (शाकभक्षी प्राणी/शाक भक्षी)
 - Detrimental (हानिकर/अहितकर)
 - Cadaverous (शवतुल्य/मृतवत)
 - Feline (बिल्ली जैसा/धूर्त)
 - Bovine (गाय जैसा)
 - Piscine (मछली जैसा)
 - Pestiferous (हानिकारक/रोजनक)
 - Prohibitory (निषेधात्मक)
 - Proletariat (मजदूर वर्ग)
 - Abstruse (गूढ़/दुर्बोध)
 - Stationery (लेखन सामग्री)
 - Honorary (अवैतनिक)
 - Widow (विधवा)
 - Widower (विधुर)
 - Scenario (नाटकीय रूपरेखा)
 - Hostess (सत्कारिणी)
 - Ambulance (एम्बुलेंस)
 - Hearse (शववाहन)
 - Fiend (क्रूर/नृशंस)
 - Memorandum (ज्ञापन/स्मरण पत्र)
 - Tourist (पर्यटक)
 - Fragile (भंगूर)
 - Pessimism (निराशावादिता)
 - Pessimist (निराशावादी)
 - Optimism (आशावादिता)
 - Optimist (आशावादी)
 - Gossip (गप-शप)
 - Incomprehensible (अबोध)
 - Insecticide (कीटनाशक)
 - Germicide (रोगाणुनाशक)
 - Antiseptic (रोगाणुरोधी)
 - Inflammation (सूजन)
 - Obstetrician (प्रसूति विशेषज्ञ)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- A person who is a specialist in bone disease.
 - A woman who is specialist in reproductive organs.
 - A person who is a specialist in heart disease.
 - A person who is a specialist in nervous system.
 - A person who is a specialist in child disease.
 - A reminder of something.
 - A person who examines teeth
 - A person who examines eyesight and sells glasses.
 - A group of ship.
 - A person who eat human flesh.
 - Persons living at the same time.
 - Person having the same opinions.
 - A plant or an animal which lives on another.
 - A child whose parents are dead.
 - A person who is a great lover of his country.
 - A person who brings in goods from a foreign country.
 - A person who sends goods to another country.
 - The dead body of a human being.
 - The dead body of an animal.
 - A person who writes the life history of another person.
 - A person who writes his life history.
 - The life history of a person written by another.
 - A man who remains unmarried.
 - A woman who remains unmarried.
 - One who can read and write.
 - One who believes in the existence of God.
 - One who does not believe in the existence of God.
 - A person who lives in a foreign country.
 - A person who leaves his own country and goes to settle in another.
 - A medicine which induces vomiting.
 - That cannot be exhausted.
 - A person who comes to one country from another to settle.
 - One who commits the first act of attack.
 - One who is all powerful
 - One who is present everywhere.
- Extempore (बिना तैयारी का भाषण)
 - Orthopedist (हड्डी रोग विशेषज्ञ)
 - Gynaecologist (स्त्री रोग विशेषज्ञ)
 - Cardiologist (हृदय रोग विशेषज्ञ)
 - Neurologist (तंत्रिका विशेषज्ञ)
 - Pediatrician (शिशु रोग विशेषज्ञ)
 - Memento (यादगार)
 - Dentist (दंत चिकित्सक)
 - Optician (नेत्र दृष्टि जाँचकर चश्मा बनाने तथा बेचने वाला)
 - Fleet (बेड़ा)
 - Cannibal (नरभक्षी)
 - Contemporary (समकालीन)
 - Unanimous (सर्वसम्मत/एकमत)
 - Parasite (परजीवी)
 - Orphan (अनाथ)
 - Patriot (देशभक्त)
 - Importer (आयातक)
 - Exporter (निर्यातक)
 - Corpse (शव)
 - Carcase (जानवरों का मृत शरीर)
 - Biographer (दूसरों की जीवनी लिखने वाला)
 - Autobiographer (आत्मकथा लिखने वाला/खुद की जीवनी लिखने वाला)
 - Biography (जीवनी)
 - Bachelor (कुंवारा)
 - Spinster/maid (कुंवारी)
 - Literate (साक्षर/पढ़ा लिखा)
 - Theist (आस्तिक)
 - Atheist (नास्तिक)
 - Alien (विदेशी)
 - Emigrant (उत्प्रवासी)
 - Emetic (कै कराने की दवा)
 - Inexhaustible (अक्षय)
 - Immigrant (अप्रवासी)
 - Aggressor (आक्रमणकर्ता)
 - Omnipotent (सर्वशक्तिमान)
 - Omnipresent (सर्वत्र)



- One who knows everything. - Omniscient (सर्वज्ञ)
- One who believes in fate. - Fatalist (भाग्यवादी)
- One who loves mankind. - Philanthropist (मानव प्रेमी/परोपकारी)
- One who plays, signs, paints pictures etc not for money, but for the love of it. - Amateur (शौकिया)
- The letters used in writing a language. - Alphabet (वर्णमाला)
- Yearly return of the date of an event. - Anniversary (वार्षिकोत्सव/जयन्ती)
- A substance like ether, chloroform. - Anaesthetic (बेहोश करने वाली दवा)
- A person who is skilled in making analysis. - Analyst (विश्लेषण कर्ता)
- One who eats too much. - Glutton (पेटू/खारू)
- A female of gander. - Goose (कुलहंसनी)
- A place of shelter for ships. - Harbour (बन्दरगाह)
- An equipment of a horse. - Harness (घोड़े का साज)
- A spear on a rope for catching whales and other larger fish. - Harpoon (हारपून-मछली पकड़ने की बछी या भाला)
- An adult male of deer. - Hart (हिरण)
- A plane figure of seven sides. - Heptagon (सप्तभुज)
- A number of animals kept feeding or travelling together. - Herd (पशुओं का झुंड)
- A plane figure with six sides. - Hexagon (षड्भुज)
- A person who takes part in a hijack. - Hijacker (अपहरणकर्ता)
- A word that is the same in sound as another but different in meaning. - Homonym (हौमनिम) श्रुतिसमभिन्नार्थक शब्द
- A supreme ruler. - Monarch (बादशाह/राजा/सुल्तान)
- A holiday which is taken by a newly married couple. - Honeymoon (सुहागरात मनाने का अवकाश)
- A diagram of the heavens showing the relative position of planets at the time of a person's death. - Horoscope (जन्मकुण्डली/जन्मपत्री)
- A person who entertains guests. - Host (मेजबान)
- A woman who entertains guest. - Hostess (महिला मेजबान)
- A dog used for hunting. - Hound (शिकारी कुत्ता)
- A person who carries off somebody by force. - Kidnapper (अपहरणकर्ता)
- A place where clothes are washed and pressed. - Laundry (कपड़े धोने की दुकान)
- An army officer who is below a captain in rank. - Lieutenant (नौसेना अधिकारी)
- or, A junior office in the navy. - Lieutenant (लैफ्टेनन्ट)
- Any alcoholic drink. - Liquor (मदिरा)
- A baggage of a traveller. - Luggage (यात्री का सामान)
- A young unmarried woman. - Maiden (अविवाहित जवान लड़की)
- A speech which is delivered for the first time.



- Maiden speech (किसी के द्वारा दिया गया प्रथम भाषण)
- An animal that feeds its young with milk from the female mammary glands. - Mammal (स्तनपायी प्राणी)
- A book, document, letter etc written by hand or typed. - Manuscript (पांडुलिपि)
- A female of donkey/horse. - Mare (घोड़ी/गदही)
- A woman who is in charge of nursing in a hospital. - Matron (अस्पताल की प्रधान परिचारिका)
- A magnificent tomb. - Mausoleum (विशाल मकबरा)
- A medical student. - Medico (डॉक्टरी पढ़ने वाला)
- Something that serves as a reminder. - Memento (यादगार/निशानी)
- A person who lives in a metropolis. - Metropolitan (महानगर का निवासी)
- A tiny living organism causing disease. - Microbe (रोगाणु)
- An optical instrument for magnifying objects. - Microscope (सूक्ष्मदर्शी)
- A period of one thousand years. - Millennium (एक हजार वर्ष की अवधि)
- One thousand millions. - Milliard (एक अरब)
- A thousand times one thousand. - Million (दस लाख)
- A man of millions. - Millionaire (लखपति)
- A person who works in a mine. - Miner (माइन) खनिक
- A place where coins are made. - Mint (टकसाल-वह स्थान जहां सिक्के ढाले जाते हैं टकसाल कहलाता है।)
- An official record of the proceeding of a meeting. - Minutes (सभा की कार्यवाही का विवरण)
- A pupil who looks after the boys in the class in the absence of the teacher. - Monitor (कक्षा का मॉनिटर)
- A person who has withdrawn from the world for religious reasons. - Monk (साधु/सन्यासी/योगी)
- Two or more than two letters combined in one design. - Monogram (दो या दो से अधिक अक्षरों को मिलाकर बना हुआ डिजाइन)
- A drama to be performed by a single man. - Monologue (एकपात्री नाटक)
- A building which is constructed to keep alive one's memory. - Monument (स्मारक)
- A hotel for the motorists, in which parking and servicing facilities are available. - Motel (कार सहित व्यक्तियों के ठहरने का होटल)
- A building where works of art, scientific specimens and other objects of permanent value are kept and displayed. - Museum (संग्रहालय/अजायबघर)
- Flesh of sheep used as food. - Mutton (भेड़ का मांस)
- Secretion of a plant which attracts the insects or birds that pollinate flowers. - Nectar (मधुर पेय/अमृत)
- One who lives near another. - Neighbour (पड़ोसी)
- A person recently married. - Neogamist (नवविवाहित मनुष्य)
- A member of a wandering tribe. - Nomad (बंजारा/यायावर)
- A central part of an atom. - Nucleus (नाभिक)



- A room or place set apart for children. - Nursery (शिशुशाला)
- or, A place where young plants and trees are raised for transplantation elsewhere - Nursery (पेड़-पौधों का घर)
- A lovely young girl. - Nymph (सुन्दर युवती)
- A notice of the death of a person. - Obituary (मृत्युसमाचार)
- A plane figure of eight sides. - Octagon (अष्टभुज)
- A young of animals. - Offspring (संतान/संतति)
- One who looks on. - Onlooker (दर्शक)
- A company of performers playing musical instruments. - Orchestra (विभिन्न प्रकार के वाद्ययंत्रों को एक साथ बजाना)
- A person who looks after horses at an inn. - Ostler (सराय में घोड़ों की देख-रेख करनेवाला साईस)
- A plane figure of the shape of an egg. - Oval (अंडाकार वस्तु)
- A person who tells the future and interprets character by reading the lines and configuration on the palm. - Palmist (हस्तरेखा शास्त्री)
- Remedy for all diseases. - Panacea (रामबाण/सर्वरोगनाशक औषधि)
- A place of perfect peace and happiness. - Paradise (पूर्ण शांति एवं सुख का स्थान)
- Supreme law making assembly. - Parliament (संसद)
- Words alike in sound but different in meaning and spelling. - Paronym (ऐसे शब्द जिनकी ध्वनि एक, परन्तु अर्थ और वर्तनी भिन्न हो)
- A person who is 15 years old. - Adolescent (किशोर)
- A person who is 60 years old. - Sexagenarian (साठ वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 70 years old. - Septuagenarian (सत्तर वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 80 years old. - Octogenarian (अस्सी वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 90 years old. - Nonagenarian (नब्बे वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- A person who is 100 years old. - Centenarian (सौ वर्ष की आयु का मनुष्य)
- An event which happens once in two years. - Biennial (द्विवार्षिक, दो साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in four years. - Quadrennial (चार साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in five years. - Quinquennial (पाँच साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in six years. - Sexennial (छः साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in seven years. - Septennial (सात साल में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in eight years. - Octennial (आठ वर्ष में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- An event which happens once in ten years. - Decennial (दस वर्ष में एक बार होने वाली घटना)
- One who makes a scientific study of language. - Linguist (अनेक भाषाओं का ज्ञाता)



- A person who lives on vegetables. - Vegetarian (शाकाहारी)
- A person who eats vegetables and meat. - Non-vegetarian (मांसाहारी)
- One who believes in oneself. - Egoist (आत्मश्लाघी/ब्रह्मवादी)
- One who wastes money for luxury. - Extravagant (खर्चीला/लुटाऊ)
- One who abandons his religious faith. - Apostate (स्वधर्म त्यागी)
- A person who has a long experience of any occupation. - Veteran (अनुभवी व्यक्ति)
- An animal which gives milk and suckles its young one. - Mammal (स्तनपायी)
- Animals which live in water. - Aquatic (पानी में रहने वाला जानवर)
- Words opposite in meaning. - Antonym (विलोम शब्द)
- Words similar in meaning. - Synonym (समानार्थक शब्द)
- Assembly of listeners. - Audience (श्रोतागण)
- Baggage of a traveller. - Luggage (सामान)
- A place where fishes and water plants are kept. - Aquarium (जलजीवशाला)
- A person who plays violin. - Violinist (सारंगी बजाने वाला)
- An area of land planted with grapes. - Vineyard (अंगूर उद्यान)
- A man or woman who has not sexual experience. - Virgin (कुमार/कुमारी जिसने सम्भोग न किया हो)
- Something that happens without a cause. - Accident (दुर्घटना)
- A person whose profession is to keep accounts. - Accountant (लेखाकार/मुनीम)
- Person with whom one is acquainted. - Acquaintance (जान पहचान वाला व्यक्ति)
- A set of instruments put together for a purpose. - Apparatus (उपकरण)
- A legal written statement. - Affidavit (शपथ पत्र/हलफनामा)
- A ground for the arrival and departure of aeroplanes. - Aerodrome (हवाई अड्डा)
- One who is engaged in husbandry. - Agriculturist (खेतिहार/किसान)
- One who drives an aeroplane. - Pilot/Aeronaut (पायलट/वायुयान चलाने वाला)
- The bony framework of the body. - Skeleton (कंकाल)
- A book giving information on every department of knowledge in alphabetical order. - Encyclopaedia (विश्व ज्ञान कोष)
- A building in which dead bodies are burnt. - Crematorium (शवदाह गृह)
- That which can be easily set on fire. - Inflammable (ज्वलनशील)
- A building in which soldiers live. - Barrack (बैरक/सैनिकों के रहने का मकान)
- That which can be heard. - Audible (श्रव्य)
- That which can be seen. - Visible (दृष्टिगोचर)
- A portable radio set. - Transistor (ध्वनिविस्तारक यंत्र)
- A change in shape, size, appearance, quality etc. - Transformation (रूपान्तरण)
- A company of persons such as pilgrims, merchants making a journey together for safety. - Caravan (काफिला/कारवाँ)
- Plans and promises which are declared by a candidate before the people in election. - Manifesto (घोषणा पत्र)
- A disease that is found regularly in a particular place. - Endemic (खास स्थान पर होने वाला बीमारी)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- A disease that causes death. - Fatal (घातक)
- A disease that affects many people at the same place and time. - Epidemic (महामारी/संक्रामक रोग)
- A disease widely epidemic. - Pandemic (देशव्यापी महामारी)
- An animal that creeps/crawls and lays eggs. - Reptile (रेंगने वाला प्राणी)
- Colouring matter of green part of plants. - Chlorophyll (पर्णहरित)
- Hundredth anniversary. - Centenary (सौवाँ वर्षगाँठ)
- A chemical used for surface cleaning - Detergent (डिटरजेंट)
- A person who is authorised to execute a legal deed. - Executor (कार्यपालक)
- or, A person who is appointed to carry out the provisions of one's will. - Executor (मृतक के इच्छा पत्र का उत्तर साधक)
- A person who is genuinely interested in the welfare and emancipation of women. - Feminist (स्त्री का कल्याण करने वाला)
- That which cannot be read. - Illigible (अस्पष्ट)
- A deceptive appearance, statement or belief. - Illusion (भ्रम)
- A person who is well versed in law. - Jurist (कानून में प्रवीण)
- A definitive system of naming especially in classification. - Nomenclature (नामकरण)
- A unscrupulous person who puts experience before principle. - Opportunist (अवसरवादी)
- State of being of one mind. - Unanimous (एकमत)
- A person who broadcasts something alive. - Commentator (टीकाकार)
- A set of terms. - Ultimatum (अंतिम शर्त)
- Government by elected representatives. - Democracy (प्रजातंत्र)
- That which cannot be burnt. - Incombustible (अदाह्य)
- An instrument which is used to view objects at a distance. - Telescope (दूरबीन)
- A journey by sea. - Voyage (समुद्रीयात्रा)
- A judgement of a court. - Decree (फैसला/डिग्री)
- A killer of a king. - Regicide (राजा का हत्यारा)
- A killer of an infant. - Infanticide (शिशु हत्यारा)
- A legal advisor. - Solicitor (कानूनी सलाहकार)
- A notice which is sent by a court. - Summons (बुलावा पत्र)
- A list of books and writings of an author. - Bibliography (ग्रंथी सूची)
- A door which opens into rooms by a narrow passage. - Corridor (गलियारा/रास्ता)
- A lover of good meals. - Gourmand (पेटू/भोजन प्रेमी)
- A person who breaks into a house to steal. - Burglar (संध मारने वाला)
- A person who brings goods illegally. - Smuggler (तस्कर)
- A person who purchase good from a shop. - Customer (ग्राहक)
- A person who interviews someone. - Interviewer (साक्षात्कार लेने वाला)
- A person who always reads books. - Bookworm (किताबी कीड़ा)
- A person who is very careful in the use of money. - Economical/frugal (मितव्ययी/कंजूस)
- A person who lives and works for others. - Altruist (परोपकारी)
- A person who travels in space. - Astronaut (अंतरिक्ष यात्री)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

- A person who travels to a holy place. - Pilgrim (तीर्थ-यात्री)
- A person who walks. - Pedestrian (पैदल चलने वाला व्यक्ति)
- From one generation to another. - Hereditary (आनुवंशिक)
- A period of ten years. - Decade (दशक)
- A person who is forced to flee to shelter. - Refugee (शरणार्थी)
- A person who is sent to other country to propagate religion. - Missionary (धर्म प्रचारक)
- Land that does not grow anything. - Barren (बंजर)
- A person who prepares and sells drugs. - Druggist (दवा विक्रेता)
- A person who runs a beauty parlour. - Beautician (शृंगार स्थल का संचालन)
- A person who frightens and wants to achieve his goal. - Terrorist (आतंकवादी)
- A person who works against his country. - Traitor (देशद्रोही)
- A person who is uncivilized. - Barbarian (असभ्य/अशिष्ट)
- A person who is employed in armed forces. - Personnel (सेना में नियुक्त कर्मचारी)
- A place where clothes are kept. - Wardrobe (कपड़ा रखने का स्थान)
- A place where dead bodies are buried. - Cemetery (कब्रिस्तान)
- A building in which people sit to listen to songs, music etc. - Auditorium (दर्शक कक्ष/रंग भवन)
- A place in which bees are kept. - Apiary (मधुमक्खियों के रहने का स्थान)
- A place in which birds are kept. - Aviary (पक्षीगृह)
- A planned activity. - Campaign (अभियान)
- A medical examination of a dead body. - Postmortem (शव परीक्षण)
- Amount paid to a man for his labour. - Remuneration (मेहनताना/पारिश्रमिक)
- Soldiers who fight on foot. - Infantry (पैदल सैनिक)
- Soldiers who fight on horseback. - Cavalry (घुड़सवार फौज)
- Land that grows things in abundance. - Fertile (उपजाऊ जमीन)
- That which is no longer in use. - Obsolete (अप्रचलित)
- A person who has a bad reputation. - Notorious (कुख्यात)
- A diplomatic representative in another country. - Ambassador (राजदूत)
- A person who believes in anything easily. - Credulous (सहज विश्वासी)
- A place where arms are kept. - Armoury (अस्त्र-शस्त्र रखने का स्थान)
- A person who studies stars, planets and other heavenly bodies. - Astronomer (खगोलशास्त्री)
- A group of ants. - Swarm (चींटियों का झुण्ड)
- A period of 15 days. - Fortnight (पंद्रह दिनों का समय-पखवाड़ा)
- A list of books. - Catalogue (पुस्तक की सूची)
- A blind adherent to creed. - Bigot (कट्टरपंथी)
- Any sort of drink except water. - Beverage (पेय पदार्थ)
- An instrument for measuring the pressure of the atmosphere. - Barometer (वायुदाबमापी यंत्र)
- One who abstains from alcoholic drinks. - Teetotaler (मादक द्रव्य व्यवहार न करने वाला मनुष्य)
- The state of living unmarried. - Celibacy (ब्रह्मचर्य/अविवाहित अवस्था)
- An imaginary line round the earth. - Equator (विषुवत रेखा)
- A place where orphans are housed. - Orphanage (अनाथालय)



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Phrases starting with 'A'

| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ABC | साधारण ज्ञान | At the point of | करीब |
| Above board | स्पष्ट | At all costs | किसी भी कीमत पर |
| Above all | सबसे अधिक | At stake | खतरे में |
| After all | अन्त में, चाहे जो हो | At variance with | विपरीत |
| All in all | सर्वेसर्वा | At all | तनिक भी |
| All the same | एक ही महत्त्व का | At all events | चाहे जो भी हो |
| All over | सभी जगह | As a rule | सदा |
| Along with | साथ-साथ | Apple-pie-order | बिल्कुल ठीक हालत में |
| All along | शुरू से अन्त तक; पूरी दूरी तक | At a time | एक बार में |
| | | At times | कभी-कभी |
| All day long | दिन भर | As long as | अब तक |
| At once | तुरंत | As soon as | ज्योंही |
| At home in | निपुण | At large | स्वतंत्र |
| Again and again | बार-बार | At the same time | उसी समय |
| At random | बिना लक्ष्य के | As a result of | के फलस्वरूप |
| As usual | सदा की भाँति | At the instance of | के उकसाने या कहने पर |
| At the latest | अन्तिम समय | At last | अन्त में |
| At heart | हृदय से | At any cost | किसी भी कीमत पर |
| At the top of | उच्चतम स्तर में | As a whole | पूरे रूप में |
| At all hazards | हर तरह के कष्ट के बावजूद | All at once | एकाएक |
| At length | अन्त में | At no time | कभी नहीं |
| At enmity with | शत्रुता रखना | At least | कम से कम |
| At a stretch | लगातार | At fault | गलती में |
| Apple of one's eye | दुलारा, प्यारा | After a fashion | किसी भाँति, संतोषप्रद ढंग से नहीं |
| Apple of discord | झगड़े की वस्तु | | |
| At the eleventh hour | अन्तिम समय में | All told | सब मिलकर |
| At bottom | भीतर से | A bird's eye view | विहंगम दृष्टि |
| At daggers drawn | कट्टर दुश्मनी होना | A lame excuse | असंतोषजनक बहाना |
| At a loss | घबरा जाना | A man of letters | विद्वान आदमी |
| At sixes and sevens | तितर-बितर | A man of parts | सुयोग्य व्यक्ति |
| As if | मानो | A man of spirit | उत्साही आदमी |
| At hand | नजदीक | A man of straw | वह आदमी जिसका कोई मत न हो |
| As a matter of fact | सचमुच | | |
| | | A slip of the pen | लिखने में गलती |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| | | | |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| A slip of the tongue | बोलने में गलती | Big gun | बड़ा या प्रभावशाली व्यक्ति |
| A snake in the grass | आस्तीन का साँप; वह आदमी जो देखने में मैत्री भाव रखता है पर हृदय में कपट। | Bosom friend | जिगरी दोस्त |
| At one's wit's end | चकित | Burning question | ज्वलन्त प्रश्न |
| As yet | अभी तक | By all means | हर तरह से |
| At any rate | किसी भी तरह | By no means | किसी प्रकार नहीं |
| At one's best | सबसे अच्छी हालत में | By and by | कुछ समय के बाद, धीरे-धीरे |
| As such | अतः | By the by | बातों ही बातों में |
| A good for nothing fellow | बेकार आदमी | Before long | शीघ्र |
| An iron-will | दृढ़विचार | Body and soul | पूर्णतया |
| A jail bird | कुख्यात अपराधी | By leaps and bounds | दिन दूनी और रात चौगुनी |
| A promising youth | होनहार युवक | By chance | संयोगवश |
| A utopain scheme | आदर्श किन्तु कार्यान्वित न होने वाली योजना | By fair means or foul | उचित या अनुचित ढंग से। |
| At one's finger's ends | पूर्ण ज्ञात | By return of post | लौटती डाक से |
| At arm's length | दूर | By and large | मोटा-मोटी तौर से। |
| At a blow | एक ही प्रहार में | Because of | कारण से |
| At sight | देखते ही | Beside the point | असंगत |
| At ease | चिन्तारहित | Bid fair | आशा दिलाना |
| All the while | इस अवधि में | Bird's eye view | सरसरी निगाह |
| Add fuel to the fire | आग में घी डालना | Bring to book | दण्ड देना |
| | | Break the ice | चुप्पी तोड़ना |
| | | By the way | बात-चीत के क्रम में। |
| | | By nature | स्वभावतः |
| | | By fair means | उचित तरीके से |
| | | Break the record | नया कीर्तिमान स्थापित करना |
| | | Bad blood | शत्रुता |
| | | Black sheep | नीच व्यक्ति |
| | | Bone of contention | झगड़े की वस्तु |
| | | Beat of contention | झगड़े की वस्तु |
| | | Bone about the bush | घुमा-फिरा कर बातें करना |
| | | Better half | पत्नी |
| | | Birds of a feather | एक ही प्रकृति का मनुष्य |
| | | Bolt from the blue | आकस्मिक विपत्ति |
| | | By force of | की सहायता से |
| | | Broad day light | दिन-दहाड़े |
| | | Bid farewell to | विदाई देना |
| | | Breathe one's last | मर जाना |

Phrases starting with 'B'

Phrasal verbs Hindi Meaning

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Bed of roses | फूलों की सेज |
| Bag and baggage | बोरिया-बिस्तर समेत |
| By far | बहुत |
| Beck and call | आज्ञा में रहना |
| By dint of | के द्वारा |
| By means of | के द्वारा |
| Beat black and blue | अत्यधिक |
| Below the mark | उचित स्तर से नीचे |
| By hook or by crook | गलत या सही किसी ढंग से करना |
| By fits and starts | रुक-रुक कर करना |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| Phrases starting with 'C' | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
| Cat and dog life | कलहपूर्ण जीवन |
| Come to light | विदित होना |
| Castles in the air | हवाई हालत में होना |
| Come true | सच्चा सिद्ध होना |
| Cry in the wilderness | अरण्यरोदन, व्यर्थ वस्तु |
| Crocodile tears | दिखावटी आँसू |
| Cut and dried | बिल्कुल तैयार |
| Child's play | आसान काम |
| Come to blow | हाथापाई करना |
| Come into force | लागू होना |
| Capital punishment | मृत्यु दण्ड |
| Chicken hearted | कायर |
| Cold war | अमैत्रीपूर्ण संबंध |
| Cold blooded | निर्दयतापूर्ण |
| Close shave | बाल-बाल बचना |
| Cock-and-bull story | झूठी कहानी |

| Phrases starting with 'D' | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Dead against | एकदम विरुद्ध |
| Dead line | निर्दिष्ट सीमा |
| Day in, day out | दिन-रात |
| Die in harness | अपने पद पर ही मृत्यु होना |
| Dead letter | जो कभी लागू था लेकिन अब लागू नहीं है। |
| Dar horse | छिपा रुस्तम व्यक्ति |
| Drop in the ocean | सागर में बूँद के समान |
| Dry facts | नीरस तथ्य |
| Do away with | छुटकारा पाना |
| Do one's utmost | जितना हो सके करना |
| Do-in-the managerpolicy | जिस सिद्धांत से न अपना लाभ हो और न दूसरे का। |
| Due to | कारण से |
| Double minded | अस्थिर बुद्धिवाला |
| Dead loss | कतई पूरा न होने वाला नुकसान |
| Do well | प्रगति करना, यश पाना |

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Down and out | हतोत्साह |
| Drop a subject | किसी विषय पर विवाद बंद करना |
| Drop in on | मिलने जाना |
| Drop out of | छोड़ देना |
| Draw a line | मर्यादा तय करना |

| Phrases starting with 'E' | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
| Every now and then | अक्सर |
| Escape one's lips | बोल जाना |
| Escape notice | ध्यान न जाना |
| Elbow room | काम करने की स्वतंत्रता |
| Eat out | होटल में भोजन करना |
| Eat one's words | शब्द वापस लेना |
| Eat humble pie | गर्व त्यागना, विनम्र हो जाना |
| Ease someone out | शिष्टतापूर्वक नौकरी से निकालना |

| Phrases starting with 'F' | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Phrasal verbs | Hindi Meaning |
| For want of | कमी से |
| Far and wide | बहुत दूर तक |
| Far and near | चारों ओर |
| For good | हमेशा के लिए |
| For fear of | भय से |
| Fair and square | निष्पक्ष |
| Fair play | ईमानदारी |
| For the sake of | के लिए |
| From head to foot | ऊपर से नीचे तक |
| From time to time | कभी-कभी |
| For the time being | तब तक के लिए |
| Fast living | विलासपूर्ण जीवन |
| Fish out of water | कष्टप्रद अवस्था में |
| First and foremost | सर्वप्रथम |
| Fancy price | मुँहमाँगी कीमत |
| Fool's paradise | मन के लड्डू |



| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| For nothing | व्यर्थ में |
| Far and away | बहुत अधिक |
| Few and far between | बहुत कम |
| From bad to worse | बदतर |
| From door to door | द्वार-द्वार जाकर |
| Fair hand | साफ लिखावट |
| Free lance | स्वतंत्र |
| French leave | बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Face to face | आमने सामने |
| Fish in troubled waters | दलबली से लाभ उठाना |
| From the bottom of one's heart | तहे दिल से। |
| Fair sex | नारी जाति |
| For good and all | सद के लिए |
| For long | अधिक दिनों तक |
| Fall into a rage | क्रुद्ध होना |
| Fall short of | कम होना |
| Fall flat on | प्रभाव नहीं डालना |
| For the purpose of | के लिए, के प्रयोजन से |
| Fast living | ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी |
| Feather one's nest | अवैध तरीके से कमाई करके रखना |
| Fed up with | तंग आ जाना |
| Fellow feeling | भाईचारा, अपनापन |
| Few and far between | बहुत कम |
| Fight shy of | टालना |
| Force one's hand | मन की बात प्रकट करने के लिए मजबूत करना |
| Forty winks | बहुत थोड़ी देर के लिए झपकी लेना |
| Fringe benefits | वेतन के अलावा मिलने वाला लाभ |
| Fair play | न्यायसंगत बर्ताव |

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Fair weather friend | मुसीबत में साथ न देने वाला मित्र |
| Fall in with | सहमत होना |
| Fall out with | झगड़ा करना |
| Fall to one's lot | नसीब में होना |
| Fall behind in | पिछड़ जाना |
| Fall a prey to | ठग जाना |

Phrasal verbs starting with 'G'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|------------------------------|---|
| Get rid of | छुटकारा पाना |
| Gala day | आनंदोत्सव का दिन |
| Good for nothing | बेकार |
| Gift of the gab | चतुराईपूर्वक धारा प्रवाह बोलने की शक्ति |
| Golden mean | मध्यम मार्ग |
| Good samaritan | दयालु व्यक्ति |
| Get the better of | किसी को हराना |
| Get by heart | जवानी याद करना |
| Go a long way | बहुत हद तक |
| Golden opportunity | सुनहला अवसर |
| Get ahead of | आगे निकल जाना |
| Get along with | मित्रवत रहना |
| Get away with | बुरा काम करके सजा से मुक्त रहना |
| Get down to | काम गंभीरतापूर्वक आरंभ करना |
| Get even with | बदला लेना |
| Get hold of | मतलब समझ पाना |
| Get into a soup | झंझट में पड़ना |
| Get into the swing of things | नई परिस्थिति में घुलमिल जाना |
| Get on one's nerves | तंग करना |
| Get on with | काम चालू करना, साथ होना |
| Get out of | बाहर निकल जाना |



| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Get out of line | अनुशासन भंग करना |
| Get the sack | नौकरी से हटाया जाना |
| Get the upper hand | मात करना, प्रमुखता प्राप्त करना |
| Get through with | काम पूरा करना |
| Get wind of | रहस्य का पता लगाना |
| Get word | संदेश मिलना |
| Give a break | अवसर देना |
| Give a piece of mind | कोसना |
| Give a ring | टेलीफोन करना |
| Go through free and wanter | कोई भी खतरा मोल लेना |
| Green room | अभिनेता का भेष-भूषा का कमरा, नेपथ्य |
| Get off scot free | अदण्डित भाग जाना |
| Go a long way | बहुत कुछ करना |

Phrases starting with 'H'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Hard and fast | कठोर, निश्चित |
| Hue and cry | हल्ला गुल्ला |
| Hand in hand | हाथ में हाथ दिये हुए |
| Hole and corner policy | गुप्त नीति |
| Heart and soul | मन से |
| Here and there | जहाँ-तहाँ |
| Hand to hand | हाथों-हाथ, हाथ से |
| Hard cash | रोकड़ |
| How and why | क्यों और कैसे |
| Hard up | तंगी में होना |
| Heart to heart | स्पष्ट ढंग से |
| High time | उत्तर या सही समय |
| Hard nut to crack | टेढ़ी खेर |
| Hammer and tongs | बड़े जोर-जोर से |
| Hang by the thread | बहुत नाजुक स्थिति में होना |
| Hard up | रुपयों की तंगी होना |

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Haul over the coals | कोसना, भर्त्सना करना |
| Have a brush with | थोड़ी सी अनबन होना |
| Have a mind | राजी होना, दिल करना |
| Have a thing at one's fingers tips | पूर्णतः ज्ञात होना |
| Have clean hands | निर्दोष पाना |
| Have in hand | कोई काम हाथ में होना |
| Have an eye on a thing | किसी वस्तु पर दृष्टि रखना |
| Have one's hands full | किसी काम में व्यस्त होना |
| Have too many irons in the fire | एक ही साथ अनेक काम करने की कोशिश करना |
| Hen-pecked husband | जोरू का गुलाम |
| Herculean task | बहुत कठिन कार्य |
| High and low | सर्वत्र |
| High living | ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी |
| Hit the nail on the head | सही बात करना |
| Hold one's tongue | खामोश रहना |
| Hush money | रिश्वत |
| Hand in glove | अत्यन्त घनिष्ठ |
| High handed | निरंकुश |
| Hard times | बुरे दिन |
| Have one's way | अपनी इच्छा के अनुसार काम करना |

Phrases starting with 'T'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Iron hand | कड़ाई से |
| In the long run | अन्तोगत्वा |
| In favour of | के पक्ष में |
| In front of | के सामने |
| In lieu of | के बदले में |
| In order to | के लिए |
| In quest of | खोज में |
| In the hope of | आशा में |
| In case | अगर |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| In course of | के क्रम में |
| In detail | विस्तार में |
| In no time | शीघ्र |
| In spite of | के बावजूद |
| In the teeth of | के मुकाबले में |
| In time | ठीक समय पर |
| In connection with | के संबंध में। |
| In defence of | की प्रतिरक्षा में, बचाव में |
| In consideration of | दृष्टिगत करते हुए, के विचार से |
| Ins and outs | विस्तृत विवरण |
| In view of | ध्यान में रखते हुए |
| In proportion to | अनुपात में |
| In respect of | दृष्टिकोण से |
| In the face of | के सामने |
| In point of | दृष्टि से |
| In a fix | घबराहट में |
| In a nutshell | संक्षेप में |
| In full swing | पूरे जोर में |
| In regard to | के संबंध में |
| In the dark | अज्ञात रहना |
| In the nick of time | ठीक समय पर |
| Instead of | के बदले में |
| Ill at ease | परेशानी में होना |
| In vogue | प्रचलित |
| Irony of fate | विधि की विडम्बना |
| In all respects | सभी प्रकार से |
| In full | पूरा |
| In fact | वस्तुतः |
| In the meantime | इस बीच में |
| In any case | किसी भी हालत में |
| In force | लागू |
| In good faith | बिना किसी बुरी नीयत के। |
| In hot haste | बड़ी जल्दीबाजी में |
| In a hurry | जल्दी में |

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| In an instant | पल भर में |
| In name only | नाममात्र का। |
| In office | सत्तारूढ़ |
| In season and out of season | हर समय, वक्त-कुवक्त |
| In case of | की स्थिति में |
| In defiance of | की अवज्ञा करके |
| In honour of | की अवज्ञा करके |
| In honour of | के सम्मान में |
| In keeping with | से मेल खाते हुए। |
| In the eye of | की नजर में |
| In place of | के बदले |
| In the interests of | के हित में |
| In the name of | के नाम पर |
| In order that | ताकि |
| In the end | अंत में |
| In one's mind's eye | अन्तश्चक्षु में |
| In fault | दोषी |
| In black and white | लिखित |
| In due course | कालक्रम में |
| In the same deal | समान परिस्थिति में होना |
| In a temper | गुस्से में होना |
| In an instant | एक ही क्षण में |
| In course of time | समय बीतने पर |

Phrases starting with 'J'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|--------------------|--|
| Jack of all trades | जो आदमी किसी भी काम में निपुण न हो, किन्तु सबसे हाथ डाले |
| Jaundiced eye | पक्षपातपूर्ण दृष्टिकोण |
| Jail bird | बार-बार जेल जानेवाला अपराधी |
| Join in with | हिस्सा लेना |
| Jump to conclusion | पूरा विचार न करते हुए। |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

Phrases starting with 'K'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| keep an eye on | निगरानी रखना |
| Keep abreast of | पीछे नहीं पड़ना |
| Kith and kin | बन्धु-बान्धव |
| Keep in view | नजर में रखना |
| Keep company | साथ देना |
| Keep body and soul together | जीवित रहना |
| Keep good time | ठीक समय बताना |
| Kee in mind | न भूलना |
| Keep in touch with | सम्पर्क बनाए रखना |
| Keep late hours | देर तक जागे रहना |
| Keep the wolf from the door | दरिद्रता से संघर्ष करना |
| Kick a habit | आदत छोड़ देना |
| Kill two birds with one stone | एक ही समय में दो काम करना |
| Know by sight | शकल से पहचानना |
| Keep one's word | प्रतीक्षा पूरी करना |

Phrases starting with 'L'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Lose sight of | उपेक्षा करना |
| Lame excuse | फालतू बहाना |
| Look blank | चकित रह जाना |
| Lie in wait | घात में रहना |
| Life and soul | जान, प्राण |
| Long and short | सारांश |
| Loaves and fishes | व्यक्तिगत लाभ |
| Learn by rote | बिना अर्थ समझे हुए रटकर याद करना |
| Lion's share | सबसे बड़ा हिस्सा |
| Long face | मुँह लटकाए हुए। |
| Left handed compliment | प्रशंसा के रूप में शिकायत |
| Loose tongue | गैर जवाबदेह बातें। |

Phrasal Verbs

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|------------------------|----------------|
| Lump sum | एक मुश्त |
| Lose heart | निराश होना |
| Laugh in one's sleeves | मन में हंसना |
| Lend one's ear | ध्यान से सुनना |
| Likttle by little | धीरे-धीरे |
| Lose heart | धीरज खोना |
| Lose one's cool | उत्तेजित होना |
| Lose one's head | संयम खो बैठना |
| Lose one's way | रास्ता भूलना |

Phrases starting with 'M'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Make a name | नाम कमाना |
| Maiden speech | जीवन में प्रथम सार्वजनिक भाषण |
| Make good | क्षतिपूर्ति करना |
| Make up one's mind | निश्चय करना |
| Miss the bus | सुअवसर खो देना |
| Man of parts | गुणवान व्यक्ति |
| Man in the street | साधारण आदमी |
| Man of action | कर्मठ व्यक्ति |
| Make an ass of oneself | बेवकूफ बनाना, गदहपनी करना |
| Make the best of both of teh worlds | दोनों हाथ लड्डू |
| Make a fortune | धनी हो जाना |
| Make friends | दोस्ती करना |
| Make or mar | बनाना या बिगाड़ना |
| Man of the world | दुनियादारी समझने वाला व्यक्ति |
| Mind one's own business | दूसरे के काम में दखल न देना |
| More or less | कम या अधिक, करीब-करीब |
| Move heaven and earth | आकाश-पाताल एक करना |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|------------------------|--|
| Make a fool of oneself | बेवकूफ बनाना |
| Make a mess of | गोल माल करना |
| Maiden name | विवाहित स्त्री का विवाहपूर्व नाम |
| Make a hash | गड़बड़ घोटाला कर देना |
| Miss the beat | अवसर खोना |
| Null and void | बेकार |
| Now and again | कभी-कभी |
| Nip in the bud | आरंभ में ही नष्ट कर देना |
| No end | अनन्त |
| Narrow escape | बाल-बाल बचना। |
| Neck and neck | बराबरी में। |
| Night and day | दिन-रात |
| Nine day's wonder | जो काम कुछ दिन के लिए तहलका मचा दे और फिर समाप्त हो जाए। |
| Now and then | कभी-कभी |
| Now or never | अभी या कभी नहीं |
| Never mind | कोई बात नहीं |

Phrases starting with 'O'

| Phrasal Verbs | Hindi Meaning |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Off and on | कभी-कभी |
| Of no avail | व्यर्थ |
| On account of | कारण से |
| Owing to | कारण से |
| On the contrary | वरन |
| Of late | हाल ही में |
| Out of question | असंभव |
| Out and out | पूर्णतः |
| Over head and ears | बहुत ज्यादा |
| On the alert | सतर्क होना |
| On the brink of | किनारे पर |
| Open and aboveboard | स्पष्ट, निश्छल |

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Once again | फिर एक बार |
| Once for all | अन्तिम बार |
| On the eve of | अवसर पर |
| Of course | अवश्य |
| Out of pocket | बिना पैसे के |
| Over and above | के अलावा |
| Of the opinion | मत का |
| On credit | उधार |
| On an average | औसतन |
| On good terms | मैत्रीभाव |
| On time | ठीक निर्धारित समय पर |
| On and on | निरन्तर |
| Once upon a time | एक बार |
| On the verge of | के सन्निकट |
| On the whole | सब कुछ ध्यान में रखते हुए। |
| On an account | किसी हालत में नहीं |
| Out of form | अच्छे फार्म में नहीं होना |
| Open secret | वह रहस्य जो सबको मालूम हो |
| Over and over again | बार-बार |
| Out of the way | गलत ढंग से |
| Off one's head | बुद्धि भ्रष्ट होना |
| Oily tongue | खुशामद की भाषा |
| On one's guard | सावधान/सचेत रहना |
| On one's last legs | खत्म होने की तैयारी में होना |
| On the spot | तत्काल, उसी क्षण |
| On the whole | साधारणतया |
| Once and for all | आखरी बार निश्चित रूप से |
| Once in a while | कभी-कभी, एकाध बार |
| One and all | सबके सब |
| Open fire | गोली चलाना प्रारंभ करना |
| Open handed man | रुपया उदारता से खर्च करने वाला व्यक्ति। |
| Open hearted man | खुले दिल का आदमी |
| Open one's mind | अपने गुप्त विचार देना |
| Out at elbows | गरीब, निर्धन |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Out of date | पुराना |
| Out of hand | बिना विलम्ब, तत्काल |
| Out of one's mind | पागल हो जाना |
| Out of temper | गुस्से में होना |
| Overnight | रात में |
| Over one's head | समझ में न आना |
| Other than | अतिरिक्त |
| On the spur of the moment | पहले से बिना निश्चित किये, तत्काल |
| On a large scale | बड़े पैमाने पर |
| On one's account | किसी की खातिर |
| On the strength of | के बल पर |
| On all hands | सभी के द्वारा |
| Out of favour | खफा होना |

Phrases starting with 'P'

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Part and parcel | आवश्यक अंग |
| Pros and cons | पक्ष और विपक्ष |
| Put on end to | समाप्त करना |
| Pandora's box | दुःख का भंडार |
| Put on flesh | मोटा होना |
| Play and fool | बेवकूफ की तरह हरकत करना |
| Put someone to death | जान से मार देना |
| Play a double game | धोखेबाजी करना |
| Play hide and seek | लुका-छिपी खेलना |
| Pick and choose | छाँटकर चुनना |
| Poison someone's | किसी के विरुद्ध कान भरना |
| Play false | धोखा देना |
| Put into action | कार्यान्वित करना |
| Pick a quarrel with | किसी के साथ उलझना |
| Pick up the late | दूसरे का बिल चुकाना |
| Pink of condition | उत्तम स्वास्थ्य होना |
| Play a trick on | किसी के साथ मजाक करना |
| Play second fiddle | निचला स्थान स्वीकारना |

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Play truant | भाग जाना |
| Plum oneself on | डींग मारना |
| Provide against a rainy day | बुरे दिन के लिए बचत करना |
| Pull one's punches | नर्म आलोचना करना |
| Pull one's weight | जिम्मेदारी निभाना |
| Pull well with | मिलजुल कर काम करना |
| Put a spoke in one's wheel | प्रगति में रुकावट |
| Put down in black and white | लिखकर रखना |
| Put on trial | केस करना |
| Put one's foot down | सख्त मनाही करना |
| Put one's shoulder to wheel | स्वयं खूब प्रयास करना |
| Put the sword | कत्ल करना |
| Put to shame | लज्जित करना |
| Put to bed | सुलाना |
| Put the cart before the horse | कोई काम उल्टे सिरे से प्रारंभ करना |
| Put one out of countenance | लज्जित करना |

Phrases starting with 'Q'

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Queer fish | अस्थिर व्यक्ति |
| Quite a few | बहुत सारे |
| Quick of understanding | तेज बुद्धि वाला |
| Quarrel with one's bread and butter | जहाँ से रोटी मिलती है वहाँ के वरिष्ठ अधिकारी से झगड़ा करना |

Phrases starting with 'R'

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Red letter day | शुभ-सौभाग्य का अत्यन्त महत्वपूर्ण दिन |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| Phrases | Hindi meaning | Phrases | Hindi meaning |
|------------------------------------|--|----------------------------|---|
| Rhyme or Reason | कारण | Snake in the grass | छिपा हुआ दुश्मन |
| Rainy day | तकलीफ के दिन | Safe and sound | सुरक्षित |
| Run short | घट जाना | Slip of the tongue | गलती से जो बात जवान से निकल जाए |
| Run a muck | सनक जाना | Slip of the pen | असावधानी के कारण लिखने में सामान्य भूल |
| Right hand man | मुख्य सहायक व्यक्ति | So long as | जब तक |
| Run the risk of | खतरा मोल लेना | Short cut | छोटा रास्ता |
| Red handed | अपराध करते समय | See eye-to-eye | पूर्णतः सहमत होना, एक ही विचार से देखना |
| Root and branch | समूल (totally) | Send word | संवाद भेजना |
| Read between the lines | अतिरिक्त मतलब समझ जाना | Show of hand | हाथ उठाकर |
| Ready money | नकद रुपया | Scot free | बचकर निकलना |
| Red tape | ऑफिसियल कार्यवाही में देर होना | Seasoned food | मसालेदार भोजन |
| Rest on one's laurels | और यश प्राप्ति हेतु कोशिश न करना | See the light | प्रकाशित होना |
| Right here | इसी जगह | Set a scheme on foot | योजना आरंभ करना |
| Right now | तत्काल, इसी समय | Set at liberty | रिहा करना |
| Rise like a phoenix from its ashes | नष्ट की हुई वस्तु का फिर से जीवित होना | Set one's face against | कड़ा विरोध करना |
| Rise to the occasion | किसी विशेष अवसर का मुकाबला करना | Set one's heart on | बहुत चाहना |
| Rough guess | मोटा अन्दाजा | Set one's teeth on | घृष्टा पैदा करना |
| Rule the roost | दूसरे पर रोब डालना, अधिकार जमाना | Shut one's mouth | किसी को चुप कराना |
| | | Slip through one's fingers | हाथ से निकल जाना |
| | | Snake in the grass | आस्तीन का साँप |
| | | Spare time | आराम का समय |
| | | Stand one's ground | अपनी बात पर डटे रहना |
| | | Stone's throw | बहुत थोड़ा फासला होना |
| | | Strike a bargain | सौदा पटाना |
| | | Sum and substance | कुल मिलाकर मतलब |
| | | Sworn enemies | कट्टर दुश्मन |

Phrases starting with 'S'

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| Small fry | साधारण आदमी |
| Sine die | अनिश्चित काल के लिए |
| Sooner or later | कभी न कभी |
| Set free | आजाद कर देना |
| Sleeping partner | निष्क्रिय हिस्सेदार |
| Stuff and nonsense | बेकार |
| Sum and substance | सारांश |
| Stand somebody in good stead | लाभ होना |

Phrases starting with 'T'

| Phrases | Hindi meaning |
|----------------|---------------|
| Tooth and nail | पूरी ताकत से |
| Talk big | डींग मारना |
| Time and again | बार-बार |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141

| | | | |
|------------------------------|--|---|---|
| Take to one's heels | भाग जाना | Take a leap in the dark | परिणाम की परवाह किए बगैर कोई खतरे का काम करना |
| Tall talk | घमंड भरी लम्बी-चौड़ी बात | Take by storm | अचानक प्रभावित करना |
| To the letter | अक्षरशः | Take into account | त |
| Turn over a new leaf | बुरे आचरण को अच्छी दिशा में पूर्ण रूप से बदलना | Take one at his word | किसी के कहने पर विश्वास करना |
| Through thick and thin | सभी परिस्थितियों में | Take one's time | जल्दी न करना |
| Through cold water | उत्साह भंग करना | Take oneself off | चले जाना |
| Through and through | पूर्णतः | Take sides | दो के झगड़े में किसी एक का पक्ष लेना |
| To the last far thing | पैसा-पैसा कर | Take the air | हवा में घूमना |
| To his face | मुँह पर ही। | Take the bull by the horns | संकट का डटकर मुकाबला करना |
| To the utmost | यथासाध्य | Take the law into one's hands | किसी को अपने ही हाथों सजा देना |
| To the point | उपयुक्त | Take time off | छुट्टी लेना |
| Take advantage of | लाभ उठाना | Take to heart | हृदय से अनुभव करना |
| Take effect | असर करना | Take to task | कोसना, भर्त्सना करना |
| Take something in one's hand | अपने हाथ में ले लेना | Through and through | पूर्णतः |
| Take heart | हिम्मत बाँधना | Through thick and thin | प्रतिकूल परिस्थिति में |
| Testing time | परीक्षा की घड़ी | Throw away money | अंधाधुंध खर्च करना |
| This and that | इधर-उधर, यह-वह | Throw cold water upon | हतोत्साहित करना |
| Think twice | सावधानीपूर्वक निर्णय लेना | Time after time | बार-बार |
| Take stock of | परिस्थिति पर सावधानीपूर्वक विचार करना | To and fro | आगे-पीछे |
| Take someone into confidence | विश्वास में लेना या प्राप्त करना | Turn over a new leaf | नया जीवन प्रारंभ करना |
| Three R's | पढ़ना, लिखना और गणित | Turn up one's nose at | नीचा समझाना |
| Take notice | ध्यान देना | Phrases startign with 'U' Phrases Hindi Meaning | |
| Take the chair | सभापति होना | | |
| Take to one's heels | भाग जाना | Up to the mark | संतोषप्रद |
| Take care of | देखभाल करना, सावधान होना | Ups and downs | उतार-चढ़ाव |
| Take hold of | पकड़ना | Uphill task | बहुत कठिन कार्य |
| Take place | होना | Up and doing | काम में सक्रिय रूप से लगना |
| Take part in | भाग लेना | Under consideration | विचाराधीन |
| Throw dust in one's eyes | आँखों में धूल झोंकना, धोखा देना | Under lock and key | ताला चाबी से बंद करके। |
| Take a fancy | बहुत पसन्द आना | | |



| | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Unless and until | जब तक नहीं .. तब तक नहीं | Without reserve | बिना किसी बात को छिपाये |
| Under the nose of | आँखों के सामने | | हुए |
| Up-to-date | आधुनिक | Well-to-do | धनी सम्पन्न |
| Up in arms | लड़ने को तैयार होना | Well-off | सम्पन्न और सुखी |
| Under the cloud | संशयास्पद होना | | |
| Upon one's sweet will | अपनी इच्छा पर | | |

Phrases starting with 'W'

| Phrases | Hindi Meaning |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| With regard to | के संबंध में |
| With a view to | लक्ष्य से |
| Without fail | निःसंदेह |
| With reference to | के संबंध में |
| With an eye to | ध्यान रखते हुए |
| Ways and means | साधन |
| Why and wherefore | मुख्य कारण |
| Worship the rising sun | नये प्रभावशाली का सम्मान करना |
| With respect to | के संबंध में |
| With might and main | सारी शक्ति के संबंध में |
| With a vengeance | सूद-मूल के साथ |
| Wide of the mark | निशाने से दूर |
| White elephant | जिस सम्पत्ति से लाभ के बदले हानि हो। |
| Well and good | ठीक है। |
| What's what | किस परिस्थिति में क्या उचित है। |
| Wheels within wheels | जटिल कार्य का और जटिल होना |
| Within an ace | करीब-करीब |
| Wolf in sheep's clothing | मित्रता जताने वाला खतरनाक आदमी |
| Worn out | राज पता लगा लेना |
| Will and pleasure | मर्जी |
| With one voice | सर्वसम्मति से |
| Warm reception | सत्कार |



Add. 41-42A, Ashok Park Main, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110035

+91-9350679141